

English

By a group of supervisors

الفصل الدراسي الأول

الصف الرابع الابتدائي

المنهج
الجديد



4th
Primary
2026



تطبيق
المعاصر التفاعلي

CONTENTS

► PART ONE

Unit 1	The Five Senses	11
Unit 2	My Community	47
Unit 3	Animals in Our World	82
Review 1		117
Unit 4	Egypt My Homeland	119
Unit 5	A Day at Work	151
Unit 6	The Hundred Dresses	185
Review 2		203

► PART TWO

► El-Moasser Homework Interactive	205
-----------------------------------	-----



UNIT

1

The Five Senses

الحواس الخمس

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Ask and answer questions about the importance of senses
السؤال والإجابة عن أهمية الحواس
- Talk about health habits, in pairs
التحدث عن العادات الصحية في ثنائيات
- Deliver a presentation on healthy eating habits
إعطاء عرض تقديمي عن العادات الصحية لتناول الطعام

Reading

- Answer questions about healthy habits
إجابة أسئلة عن العادات الصحية
- Identify the setting and characters
التعرف على مكان وزمان وشخصيات القصة
- Order daily events using sequence words
قراءة وترتيب أحداث يومية باستخدام كلمات التسلسل والتتابع

Listening

- Identify vocabulary related to the five senses
التعرف على مفردات متعلقة بالحواس الخمس
- Answer comprehension questions in a listening dialog
إجابة أسئلة فهم في محادثة سماعية
- Recognize short and long vowels as in "pen" and "feed"
التعرف على الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والحروف الممدودة مثل "pen" و "feed"

Writing

- Use the present simple tense to write meaningful sentences
استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط لكتابة جمل ذات معنى
- Write a daily routine using words of sequence
كتابة روتين يومي باستخدام ظروف التسلسل والتتابع
- Plan a presentation on healthy eating habits
إعداد عرض تقديمي عن العادات الغذائية الصحية



What are the five senses ?



I

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

Our Senses

حواسنا

Taste حاسة التذوق



We **taste** with our **tongue**.
نتذوق بلساننا.

Touch حاسة اللمس



We **touch** with our **hands**.
نلمس بأيدينا.

Hearing حاسة السمع



We **hear** with our **ears**.
نسمع بأذاننا.

Sight حاسة الإبصار



We **see** with our **eyes**.
نرى بأعيننا.

Smell حاسة الشم



We **smell** with our **nose**.
نشم بأنفنا.

fire	حريق / نار	amazing	رائع / مذهل	tongue	لسان
smoke	دخان	voices	أصوات [بشرية]	delicious	لذيذ الطعم

Extra vocabulary

students	طلاب	children	أطفال	excellent	رائع / ممتاز
beautiful	جميل	birds singing	غناء الطيور	great	عظيم
school garden	حديقة المدرسة	butterflies	فراشات	huge	ضخم
music	موسيقى	shapes	أشكال	loud noise	ضوضاء صاخبة
soft	ناعم / لين	hard	صلب / خشن	situations	مواقف
colorful	ملون	classroom	حجرة الدراسة	world	عالم

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used	hear	يسمع	heard
taste	يتذوق	tasted	find	يجد	found
touch	يلمس	touched	sing	يغني	sang
try	يحاول	tried	understand	يفهم	understood

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

learn about

يتعلم عن

What a beautiful day! يا له من يوم جميل!

stay safe

يبقى آمنًا

talk about

يتحدث عن

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Our amazing senses	senses - understand	Senses help us understand the world around us.
	hearing - singing	We use our sense of hearing to hear birds singing.
	stay safe	Senses help us stay safe.
	smoke - fire	If we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Sight, hearing, taste, and touch are our
a. jobs b. senses c. toys d. machines
- SB** I food with my tongue.
a. see b. hear c. taste d. touch
- When I things, I know if it's soft or hard.
a. smell b. touch c. hear d. learn
- I can hear a loud in the street.
a. noise b. smoke c. color d. shape
- Can I your red flower?
a. smell b. hear c. taste d. talk
- Our amazing senses help us stay
a. busy b. safe c. far d. slow
- Butterflies are They have many bright colors.
a. delicious b. hard c. colorful d. scary
- SB** I touch with my
a. ears b. nose c. tongue d. hands

9. The school library is I like visiting it.

a. soft

b. amazing

c. loud

d. noisy

II

Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Let's talk about our senses

هيا بنا نتحدث عن حواسنا !

Ms. Mona and the students are talking about the five senses.

الأستاذة منى والطلاب يتحدثون عن الحواس الخمس.



Good morning, children! What a **beautiful**^[1] day in the school garden. صباح الخير، يا أطفال! يا له من يوم رائع في حديقة المدرسة.

[1] جميل

[2] يتعلم

[3] حواس

Good morning, Ms. Mona! What will we **learn**^[2] today ?

صباح الخير، يا أستاذة منى! ماذا سنتعلم اليوم ؟



Today, we'll learn about our **amazing** senses^[3].

اليوم، سنتعلم عن حواسنا الرائعة.



What are senses, Ms. Mona ?

ما هي الحواس، يا أستاذة منى ؟





Senses help us **understand**^[4] the world around us - like sight, hearing, and smell.

تساعدنا الحواس على فهم العالم من حولنا، مثل حاسة الإبصار وحاسة السمع والشم.

[4] يفهم

[5] ملون

[6] حاسة الشم

[7] حاسة الإبصار

[8] حريق

I can hear birds singing! أستطيع أن أسمع غناء الطيور!



Yes! That's your sense of hearing. What else can we use ?

حسنًا! هذه هي حاسة السمع. ماذا أيضًا يمكننا استخدامه؟

I can smell the flowers and see the **colorful**^[5] butterflies!

يمكنني شم الزهور ورؤية الفراشات الملونة!



Excellent, Salma ! Those are your senses of **smell**^[6] and **sight**^[7]. Senses also help us stay safe.

رائع، يا سلمى! هذه هي حاسة الشم وحاسة الإبصار. تساعدنا الحواس أيضًا أن نبقى آمنين.

Ms. Mona, how do our senses help us stay **safe** ?

كيف تساعدنا الحواس أن نبقى بأمان، يا أستاذة منى؟



That's a great question, Sami ! For example, if we smell smoke, we know there's a **fire**^[8].

هذا سؤال رائع، يا سامي! على سبيل المثال، إذا قمنا بشم رائحة الدخان نعرف أن هناك حريق.

Determine the meaning of words.

وضح معاني الكلمات.

Learn

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**safe**" is ".....".

a. healthy

b. **dangerous**

c. great

d. huge

Practice

2. The underlined word "**amazing**" means ".....".

a. wonderful

b. tired

c. free

d. sad

III

Listening script

★ Listen and learn. استمع وتعلم.

1. I taste **delicious**^[1] food with my tongue.
2. I touch soft and hard things with my hands.
3. I smell **flowers**^[2] in the **garden**^[3] with my nose.
4. I hear **music**^[4] and voices with my ears.
5. I see colors and **shapes**^[5] with my eyes.

[1] لذيذ الطعم

[2] زهور

[3] الحديقة

[4] الموسيقى

[5] أشكال

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والأسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We learned about our at school today.
a. houses b. animals c. senses d. school
- Ms. Mona is our teacher.
a. science b. math c. history d. English
- We will learn about amazing today.
a. plants b. insects c. animals d. senses
- Senses help us the world around us.
a. smell b. see c. understand d. touch

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We can flowers with our nose.
a. taste b. smell c. see d. touch
- There is a Look at the dark smoke.
a. fire b. noise c. match d. rain
- This soup is hot, it hurts my
a. tongue b. nose c. neck d. feet
- You use your sense of to listen to music.
a. smell b. sight c. hearing d. touch

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

eyes - senses - hear - touch - tongue

We have five senses. They help us understand the world around us. Our [1] are sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch. We use our ears to [2] We use our eyes to see. We use our [3] to taste. We use our hands to [4] We use our noses to smell.

4 Reorder to make sentences.

أعد الترتيب لتكون جمل.

1. senses - have - **How** - do - many - we ?

2. touch - my - I - with - hands - can.

3. senses - Why - are - us - to - important ?

☀️ **5** Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

1. if we smell smoke, we know there's a fire

- ## 2. what will we learn today

- **6** Write a paragraph of [18 – 24] words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [١٨-٢٤] كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

Our senses

مجاہد عنہ فی نہایۃ الکتاب

Guiding elements :

- hear
- smell
- safe



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

Healthy habits

عادات صحية



brush teeth
يفسل أسنان



wash face
يفسل وجه



wake up early
يستيقظ مبكراً



play sports
يلعب رياضة



drink plenty of water
يشرب الكثير من المياه



take a shower
يستحم



do exercises
يتدرب / يتمرّن

break time

وقت الفسحة

energy

طاقة

sharp

يقظ / منتبه

• Extra vocabulary

strong	قوى	brown bread	خبز القمح [البلدى]	after that	بعد ذلك
mind	عقل	first	أولاً	orange juice	عصير برتقال
fresh	طازج	vitamins	فيتامينات	competition	مسابقة
together	معاً	sweets	حلوى	vegetables	خضروات
again	مرة أخرى	sleep	ينام / النوم	sick	مريض
simple	بسيط	late	متأخراً	kitchen	مطبخ

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
follow	يتبع	followed	win	يفوز	won
wash	يغسل	washed	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
brush	يغسل بالفرشاة	brushed	drink	يشرب	drank
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	take	يأخذ	took
practice	يتدرب	practiced	give	يمد/يعطى	gave
			grow	يزرع	grew
			sleep	ينام	slept

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

give ... energy	يمد / يزود بالطاقة	take a shower	يأخذ دُش
a 10 - year- old girl	فتاة عمرها عشر سنوات	do well	ينجح / يؤدي جيدًا
for breakfast	في وجبة الإفطار	stay sharp	يكون يقظ / متنبها
between classes	بين الحصص الدراسية	do homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلي
during break time	خلال الفسحة/ أثناء وقت الاستراحة	getting enough sleep	الحصول على قدر كاف من النوم
go to bed early	ينام مبكرًا	make friends	يكوّن صداقات
plenty of = a lot of	الكثير من	at night	ليلاً

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My Healthy Day	follow - strong	Sarah follows good habits to stay strong and healthy.
	teeth - face	Sarah brushes her teeth and washes her face.
	plenty of water	Sarah drinks plenty of water between classes.
	fruits - dinner	Sarah eats lots of vegetables and fruits for dinner.
	habits - well	Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. **SB** She good habits every day to stay strong.

a. stays

b. follows

c. plays

d. breaks

2. He his teeth twice a day.
a. gives b. cooks c. brushes d. exercises
3. Healthy food gives us
a. energy b. sweets c. time d. habits
4. We play games during time at school.
a. study b. class c. break d. reading
5. They fresh fruits and vegetables in the garden.
a. stay b. grow c. learn d. wake
6. **SB** Getting enough sleep helps our mind stay
a. sharp b. weak c. lazy d. busy
7. Sleeping early, exercising, and eating fresh vegetables are from my healthy
a. habits b. subjects c. senses d. stories
8. I do some at the gym every day.
a. studies b. exercises c. meals d. foods
9. When you are healthy, you well at school.
a. brush b. do c. carry d. drink
10. Before going to, I listen to quiet music to sleep well.
a. bed b. cinema c. school d. park

II Listening and Reading

My Healthy Day

يوم الصحى

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy.

In the morning, Sarah wakes up early at 6:00 a.m. She brushes her teeth and washes her face. Next, she does some simple exercises in the garden.

سارة فتاة تبلغ من العمر 10 سنوات. فهي تتمتع بصحة جيدة. حيث إنها تتبع عادات جيدة كل يوم لتبقى قوية وصحية. في الصباح، تستيقظ سارة مبكرًا في الساعة السادسة صباحًا. تغسل أسنانها بالفرشاة وتغسل وجهها. ثم تقوم ببعض التمارين الرياضية البسيطة في الحديقة.

For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and brown bread. These foods give her energy for the day.

At school, Sarah drinks plenty of water between classes. She plays sports with her friends during break time.

In the afternoon, Sarah does her homework first. After that, she helps her mother in the garden. They grow fresh vegetables together.

For dinner, Sarah eats lots of vegetables and fruits. These give her important vitamins. She doesn't eat too many sweets.



في وجبة الإفطار، تأكل سارة طعامًا صحيًا. تشرب عصير البرتقال، وتتناول البيض وخبز القمح الكامل [الخبز البني]. هذه الأطعمة تمنحها الطاقة طوال اليوم. في المدرسة، تشرب سارة الكثير من الماء بين الحصص الدراسية. وتلعب الرياضة مع أصدقائها أثناء فترة الاستراحة.

في فترة بعد الظهر، تقوم سارة بأداء واجباتها المدرسية أولًا. بعد ذلك، تساعد والدتها في الحديقة. يزرعون معًا الخضروات الطازجة. وفي وجبة العشاء، تأكل سارة الكثير من الخضروات والفواكه والتي تمنحها فيتامينات هامة. لا تأكل سارة الكثير من الحلوى.

In the evening, Sarah takes a shower and brushes her teeth again. She goes to bed early at 8:30 p.m. She sleeps for 9 hours every night. Getting enough sleep helps her body stay healthy and her mind stay sharp.

Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school. She has lots of energy to learn, play, and enjoy her day!

في المساء، تأخذ سارة دُشًا وتُفرش أسنانها مرة أخرى. تذهب إلى النوم مبكرًا في الساعة ٨:٣٠ مساءً، فهي تنام لمدة تسع ساعات كل ليلة. يساعد الحصول على قدر كافٍ من النوم جسمها على البقاء بصحة جيدة، ويساعد عقلها على أن يكون يقظًا. عادات سارة الصحية تساعد على الشعور بالراحة والنجاح في المدرسة. مما يجعلها تتمتع بالكثير من الطاقة لتتعلم وتلعب وتستمتع بيومها!

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn

1. Sarah does exercises in the

a. room b. garden c. school d. library

Practice

2. For breakfast, Sara drinks

a. tea b. orange juice c. milk d. coffee

Think

• Why is a good night's sleep important to us ?

- لماذا النوم الجيد في الليل مهم لنا ؟

III

Language in use

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage : الاستخدام

- We use the present simple tense to talk about daily habits and routines.
◀ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

Formation : التكوين

- Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / You / We / They /
plural noun اسم جمع

Children

التصريف
الأول للفعل

play

باقي الجملة

in the park.



He / She / It /
singular noun اسم مفرد

Ahmed

التصريف الأول للفعل
+ [s/es/ies]

brushes

باقي الجملة

his teeth.



لاحظ أن:

١. يضاف لمعظم الأفعال [s] مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex: - She takes vitamins every morning.

٢. يضاف للفعل [es] مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهياً بـ [ss, ch, sh, o, x].

ex: - My brother watches TV after lunch.

٣. يضاف للفعل [ies] مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهياً بـ [y] مسبوقاً بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف [y].

ex: - My sister studies English every day.

► Remember

تذكر:

◀ لاحظ كيفية استخدام [verb to be] في زمن المضارع البسيط:

Verb
"To be"
فعل يكون

I → am = 'm

He / She / It / فاعل مفرد → is = 's

You / They / We / فاعل جمع → are = 're

ex: - He is happy.

- They are cute.

- I'm a teacher.



Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. **SB** He [read] books in the morning.
2. **SB** The nurse [help] sick people.
3. She [do] her homework in the afternoon.
4. He [wake] up at 6:30 a.m.
5. They [eating] healthy breakfast every day.
6. Vegetables [gave] us vitamins. They're healthy.
7. **SB** She [sleep] for 9 hours every night.
8. Hatem [watch] TV in the evening.
9. I [taking] a shower every day.
10. Mariam [are] my best friend.

2 Read and correct the underlined mistakes. اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء التي تحتها خط.

1. He are healthy and strong. [.....]
2. Yara and Rana helps their mother in the kitchen. [.....]
3. Healthy foods gives me energy. [.....]
4. Farmers grows many crops in Egypt. [.....]
5. She go to school by bus. [.....]

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My brother tennis on weekends.
a. play b. plays c. played d. playing
2. They their cars every Friday.
a. washes b. wash c. washing d. washed
3. The girls their mother every day.
a. helps b. helping c. help d. is helping
4. Laila plenty of water every morning.
a. drink b. drinks c. to drink d. drinking
5. I early every night.
a. sleep b. sleeping c. sleeps d. slept

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

- **1 Listen and answer the following questions.** استمع واجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

1. How old is Mazen ?

.....

2. Where does Mazen live ?

.....

3. How often does Mazen eat healthy food ?

.....

4. Where does Mazen do some exercises ?

.....

- **2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A clever boy has a sharp

a. body b. mind c. sleep d. food

2. **SB** She lots of energy so she can learn, play, and enjoy her day !

a. have b. do c. has d. are

3. Her habits help her feel good.

a. unhealthy b. slow c. healthy d. difficult

4. We some exercises in the morning.

a. does b. do c. doing d. done

- **3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

garden - sleep - habits - stay - healthy

It's important to have a healthy day. Having healthy [1] helps us live a better life. When we eat healthy food, we [2] strong and fit. Getting enough [3] every night helps our body stay [4] and keeps our mind sharp. Doing exercises is also important for us.

- **4 Read the text and answer the questions.** اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy. In the morning, Sarah wakes up early at 6:00 a.m. She brushes her teeth and washes her face. After that, she does some simple exercises in the garden.

For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice, and eats eggs and brown bread. These foods give her energy for the day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about Sara's
a. healthy habits b. favorite clothes c. favorite story d. bedroom
2. Sarah does some exercises in the.....
a. zoo b. museum c. garden d. school

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What time does Sarah wake up ?
.....
4. How old is Sarah ?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. **SB** She [go] to bed early at 8:30 p.m.
2. I [studies] math on Saturdays.
3. He [brush] his teeth in the morning.
4. They [eats] healthy food every day.

6 Reorder to make sentences.

أعد الترتيب لتكون جمل.

1. Sarah - healthy - Why - eat - food - does ?
.....
2. ^١ helps - people - The nurse - sick.
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

1. which habit do you think is healthy
.....
2. she doesn't eat too many sweets
.....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ثمانية عشر [١٨] كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

Your healthy habits

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What healthy habits do you practice ?
 - How do healthy habits help you at school ?
 - What healthy habits would you like to start ?
-
-
-
-

► Story Time :
Goha's Great Meal
► Pronunciation



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

coins	عملات معدنية	soup	حساء [شورية]	smell	رائحة / يشم
owner	مالك	yummy	لذيذ	restaurant	مطعم
jingling sound	صوت رنين خفيف	greedy	طماع / جشع	deep breath	نفس عميق

• Extra vocabulary

market	السوق	meal	وجبة	suddenly	فجأة
hungry	جائع	light	خفيف	cleverly	بطريقة بارعة
window	نافذة	outside	بالخارج	response / answer	رد / إجابة
lesson	الدرس المستفاد	wonderful	رائع	clever	ماهر / ذكي
pocket	جيب	characters	شخصيات		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
invite يدعو	invited	buy يشتري	bought
believe يعتقد / يصدق	believed	say يقول	said
share يشارك / يتشارك	shared	pay for يدفع [ثمن]	paid for
offer يعرض	offered	shake يهز / بهتز	shook

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

impressed by	منبهرب	walk through	يتجول في
for free	مجاناً	laugh at	يضحك على
come from	يأتي من	share with	يتشارك مع
take out from	يخرج من	taste better	مذاقه ألد
come inside	يدخل	solve the problem	يحل المشكلة
take a deep breath	يأخذ نفس عميق		

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
owner	someone who has something شخص يمتلك شيئاً
jingling	a light, ringing sound صوت رنين خفيف
share	to give some of what you have to others إعطاء جزء مما تملكه للآخرين
hungry	wanting to eat الشعور برغبة في تناول الطعام
greedy	always wanting more than what is needed الرغبة في الحصول على أكثر مما تحتاج

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Goha's Great Meal	hungry - money	Goha was hungry, but he didn't have enough money to buy food.
	smell - soup	He smelled delicious soup from a restaurant.
	sit outside	He sat outside the restaurant, enjoying the smell of the soup.
	owner - pay	The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell.
	offer - coins	Goha offered to pay for the smell with the sound of his coins.
	laugh - share	The owner laughed and invited Goha in the restaurant to share the soup.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The student answers all the questions easily.
a. dangerous b. greedy c. clever d. lazy
- I want to have a sandwich. I'm really
a. free b. hungry c. strong d. thirsty
- There's a of perfume in the air.
a. smell b. taste c. voice d. sound
- SB** A/An means someone who has something.
a. character b. owner c. coach d. teacher
- SB** "....." means a light, ringing sound.
a. Dark b. Taste c. Jingling d. Noise

II

Listening and Reading

★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

The story elements are :

عناصر القصة هي :

Characters

▶ The people and animals in a story

الشخصيات : الأشخاص والحيوانات في القصة

Setting

▶ The time and place of a story

زمان ومكان القصة

Plot

الحبكة

→ • **Beginning** Meet the people / Know the place

البداية : مقابلة الأشخاص والتعرف على المكان

→ • **Problem** Something goes wrong

المشكلة : أي حدث خطأ ما

→ • **Middle** The character tries to solve it

المنتصف : يقوم الأشخاص بمحاولة إصلاح هذا الخطأ

→ • **Climax** The most exciting part

الذروة : الجزء الأكثر تشويقاً في القصة

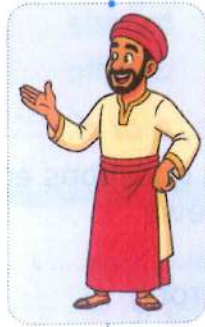
→ • **Ending** The problem is solved

نهاية القصة : يتم فيها حل المشكلة

The characters of the story



Goha
[The main character]



the owner of
the restaurant

The setting of the story



Time

in
the morning

Place

outside the
restaurant

Goha's Great Meal

The Beginning

One morning, Goha was walking through the market. He was very hungry, but didn't have enough **money**^[1] to buy food. Suddenly, he smelled something wonderful. The **yummy**^[2] smell was coming from a **restaurant's window**^[3]. Goha stopped and sat outside the restaurant. He closed his eyes and took a deep breath. "Ah," he said. "This **wonderful**^[4] smell makes me feel **less hungry**^[5]!"

في أحد الأيام في الصباح، كان جحا يسير في السوق. كان جائعًا جدًا لكنه لم يكن يملك مالًا كافيًا لشراء الطعام. فجأة، شم رائحة شيء رائع. الرائحة اللذيذة كانت تأتي من شباك مطعم. توقف جحا وجلس خارج المطعم. أغلق عينه وأخذ نفساً عميقاً وقال: «أه، هذه الرائحة الرائعة تجعلني أشعر بجوع أقل!»



[1] مال / نقود

[2] لذيذ

[3] نافذة المطعم

[4] رائع

[5] أقل جوعاً

[6] فكر للحظة

[7] صوت العملات

المعدنية

[8] تفضل بالدخول

The Middle

The restaurant owner saw Goha and asked, "What are you doing?"

Goha said, "I'm enjoying the smell of your delicious soup."

The owner was greedy. He said, "You can't smell the soup for free! You must pay for it!"

Goha **thought for a moment**^[6]. Then, he took out a few coins from his pocket. He shook them in his hand, and they made a jingling sound. "Here," said Goha. "If you want money for the smell of your soup, then you can take the **sound of my coins**^[7]."

رأى صاحب المطعم جحا وسأله: «ماذا تفعل؟» قال جحا: «أنا أستمع براحة الحساء اللذيذة.» صاحب المطعم كان طماعاً وقال: «لا يمكنك الاستمتاع بالرائحة مجاناً! يجب أن تدفع مقابل ذلك. فكر جحا للحظة ثم أخرج بعض العملات المعدنية القليلة من جيبه. وهزّها في يده لتصدر صوتاً رناناً، وقال جحا: «ها هي، إذا أردت المال مقابل رائحة الحساء، إذاً يمكنك أن تأخذ صوت نقودي.»

The End

The owner laughed at Goha's clever answer. "**Come inside**^[8]" he said.

"Let's share this soup. Good food tastes better when shared with others!"

ضحك صاحب المطعم من رد جحا الذكي وقال: «تفضل بالدخول لننتشارك هذا الحساء مقاً. الطعام الجيد يكون ألد عند مشاركته مع الآخرين!»

The moral lesson of the story :

It's good to share things with others.

الدرس المستفاد من القصة:

من الجيد أن نشارك الأشياء مع الآخرين.

III

Pronunciation

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Short and Long Vowels

Short vowels

/ɑ:/ , /æ/ , /e/

- The short vowel [ɑ] makes the sound /ɑ:/



pot إناء



hot حار

- The short vowel [æ] makes the sound /æ/



cat قطة



hat قبعة



rat فأر

- The short vowel [e] makes the sound /e/



pen قلم

Long vowels

/i:/ , /eI/ , /oV/

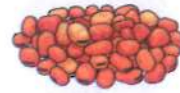
- The long vowel [e] makes the sound /i:/



feed يطعم



heat حرارة



bean فول

- The long vowel [a] makes the sound /eI/

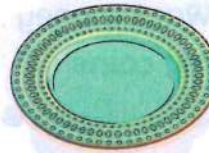


plate طبق

- The long vowel [o] makes the sound /oV/



home منزل

Notes

- Short vowel sounds are pronounced quickly and not pronounced as their letter name, like the "a" in "hat".

الأصوات القصيرة تنطق بسرعة ولا تنطق مثل أسماء الحروف مثل «a» في كلمة «hat».

- Long vowel sounds are pronounced the same way as their letter name, like the "a" in "plate".

الأصوات الممدودة تنطق مثل أسماء الحروف مثل الصوت «a» في كلمة «plate».



Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 Read and sort.

اقرأ وصنف.

pot - feed - home - plate - hat - pen

Short vowels

Long vowels

2 Look, read and complete.

feed - home - plate - fate

1. Hany went and changed into his best clothes.

2. The children their cat in the morning.

3. I washed the after dinner.



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

3 Listen and write the missing letters.

1. pl - t - 2. p - t 3. h - m - 4. h - t

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Omar to eat. He is hungry.
a. don't want b. to want c. want d. wants
- The is the time and place of a story.
a. beginning b. setting c. moral d. end
- My mother cooks very well. Her food always a yummy smell.
a. has b. have c. having d. have to
- We heard a sound when he shook his coins.
a. jingling b. shouting c. crying d. crashing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

smell – welcomed – coins – soup – share

One day, Goha was hungry but he didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious [1] from a restaurant. He sat outside, enjoying the [2] of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his [3] The owner laughed and invited him in to [4] the soup.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

A farmer and his wife have a duck. This is a special duck because it lays a golden egg every day. They sell the egg for a lot of money. They feel happy. Then, one day, they decide to kill the duck and get all the eggs at once to be rich faster.

When they do that, they find nothing inside the duck. They are very sad now and learn the lesson "Not to be greedy".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The opposite of the underlined word "rich" is ".....".
a. amazing b. healthy c. poor d. weak
- The farmer and his wife are
a. kind b. clever c. greedy d. good

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is the duck special ?

4. What do the farmer and his wife decide to do to get all the eggs ?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. I [reads] a story before sleeping.
2. He [wash] his car on weekends.
3. We [helps] mom clean our apartment.
4. She [live] in Alexandria.

5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes. اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء التي تحتها خط.

1. They has lunch at 3 p.m. [.....]
2. He study English with his dad. [.....]
3. You spends your money on sweets. [.....]
4. The restaurant open at 9 a.m. [.....]

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

1. how was goha clever in solving the problem

2. do you share food with your friends

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ثمانية عشر [18] كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

Sharing with others

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- food
- greedy
- kind



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

daily routine	روتين يومي	healthy	صحي	snack	وجبة خفيفة
same	متشابه / نفس الشيء	get dressed	يرتدي ملابس	including	متضمنًا / مشتملاً على

• Extra vocabulary

early	مبكرًا	breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	break time	فترة الاستراحة
lunch	وجبة الغداء	clear	واضح	including	يحتوي على / متضمنًا
dinner	وجبة العشاء	headings	عناوين	eating habits	عادات الأكل [الطعام]

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
add	يضيف	added	let	يدع/يسمح	let
study	يدرس	studied	tell	يخبر	told
prepare	يعد - يجهز	prepared	go	يذهب	went

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

after school	بعد المدرسة	in the evening	في المساء
for one hour	لمدة ساعة	stay strong	يبقى قويًا
do homework	يؤدي الواجب المنزلي	keep me healthy	يحافظ على صحي

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My healthy life	routine - important	Having a daily routine is important.
	get dressed	I wash my face and get dressed for school.
	break time	During break time, I eat my healthy snack and drink water.
	sports - hour	I do my homework and play sports for one hour.
	dinner - evening	I take a shower and have dinner in the evening.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. **SB** I follow the same every day.
a. routine b. sense c. home d. sleep
2. I sleep at 10 p.m and up at 6 a.m.
a. take b. go c. wake d. give
3. She got at 7 : 00 to be ready for the party.
a. dressed b. sleep c. exercise d. lost
4. **SB** How do you healthy ?
a. have b. stay c. help d. wash
5. I useful subjects at school.
a. shake b. sit c. make d. study
6. You can eat a between breakfast and lunch.
a. dinner b. color c. snack d. breath
7. The two pictures aren't different, they are the
a. same b. strong c. late d. clever
8. He a shower in the evening.
a. goes b. takes c. makes d. talks

II Listening and Reading

★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

My Healthy Life

حياتي الصحية

How can you stay healthy ?

Having a daily routine is important.
Let me tell you about my healthy habits
and how they help me stay **strong**.

Every day, I follow the same routine.
First, I **wake up**^[1] early at 6:00 a.m and
brush my teeth^[2]. I **wash my face**^[3]
and get dressed for school. Next, I have
a healthy breakfast , including **milk**^[4] and
fruit.



Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

[1] يستيقظ [2] أغسل أسناني بالفرشاة [3] اغسل وجهي [4] لبن

Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. During **break time**^[5], I eat a **healthy** snack and drink water. After school, I have lunch with my family. After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. In the evening, I **take a shower**^[6] and have dinner. Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because **sleeping early**^[7] keeps me healthy.

- [5] فسحة / فترة
استراحة
[6] يستحم
[7] النوم مبكرًا

اتبع روتين يومي مهم. دعوني أخبركم عن عاداتي الصحية وكيف تساعدني هذه العادات على البقاء قويًا كل يوم. اتبع نفس الروتين، أولاً، استيقظ مبكرًا في الساعة السادسة صباحًا وأغسل أسناني بالفرشاة. اغسل وجهي وارتندي ملابسني للذهاب إلى المدرسة. بعد ذلك، أتناول فطورًا صحيًا يحتوى على الحليب والفواكه. ثم أذهب إلى المدرسة حيث أدرس وألعب مع أصدقائي. في وقت الاستراحة، أتناول وجبة صحية خفيفة وأشرب الماء. بعد المدرسة، أتناول الغداء مع عائلتي، ثم أقوم بواجباتي المدرسية وبعدها ألعب الرياضة لمدة ساعة. في المساء، استحم. وأتناول العشاء. وأخيرًا، أذهب إلى النوم في الساعة التاسعة مساءً، لأن النوم مبكرًا يساعدني على البقاء بصحة جيدة.

Determine the meaning of words.

وضح معاني الكلمات.

Learn

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**healthy**" is ".....".

a. unhealthy

b. heavy

c. colorful

d. beautiful

Practice

2. The opposite of the underlined word "**strong**" is ".....".

a. weak

b. delicious

c. boring

d. sharp

III

Writing Skill

1 Sequence words "for daily routine"

كلمات التسلسل والتتابع [للحديث عن الروتين اليومي]

Sequence words

help us show the order of actions or events.

هي كلمات تساعدنا على توضيح ترتيب الأحداث.

كلمات التسلسل والتتابع

Sequence words

tell us what happens at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end.

تخبرنا عما يحدث في البداية وفي المنتصف وفي النهاية.

كلمات التسلسل والتتابع

ex To talk about daily routine we use :

First, → أولاً

First, I wake up at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth.

Next, → التالي

Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

Then, → ثم

Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends.

After that, → بعد ذلك

After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour.

Finally, → أخيرًا

Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

★ Write your daily routine using sequence words.

.....

.....

.....

.....

2 A presentation about healthy eating habits

عرض تقديمي عن عادات الطعام الصحية

To make a presentation, make sure that you : لعمل عرض تقديمي تأكد من :

Speak clearly and slowly.
التحدث بوضوح وببطء.

Use clear headings.
استخدام عناوين واضحة.

Add pictures.
إضافة الصور.

Keep the text simple.
الحفاظ على سهولة النص.

Speak for 3 - 5 minutes.
التحدث من 3 - 5 دقائق.

General Exercises

on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

- **1 Listen and circle the correct answer.** استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Noha is [lazy - fit] and healthy.
- Noha has many healthy [habits - friends].
- Noha wakes up very [early - late].
- Noha has a healthy [lunch - breakfast] with her family.

- **2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I help my brother to his homework.
a. does b. doing c. do d. did
- Fruit is a healthy
a. snack b. routine c. subject d. soup
- I sports for one hour at the park.
a. to play b. playing c. plays d. play
- We live a healthy life because we a healthy routine.
a. brush b. study c. break d. follow

- **3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

homework - First - breakfast - teeth - Next

Having a daily routine is important. I follow the same routine every day.
[1], I wake up at 7 a.m. I wash my face, brush my [2]
and get dressed for school. Next, I have my healthy [3] with
my family. Then, I go to school. After school, I have lunch and do my
[4] Finally, I go to bed early.

- **4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

- We [has] fruits for dinner every night.
- Marwan [play] sports at the club.
- I [likes] my school.
- They [travels] to Aswan by plane.

• **5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.** اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء التي تحتها خط.

1. I takes a shower before sleeping. [.....]
2. She wash the dishes after lunch. [.....]
3. Ali and Sami feeds their dog every day. [.....]
4. Eman walk to school with her friends every morning. [.....]

• **6 Rearrange to make a sentence.** أعد الترتيب لتكون جملة.

1. do - you - How - healthy - stay ?

.....

2. keeps - Sleeping - me - early - healthy.

.....

• **7 Punctuate the following.** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

1. after that, she has a healthy lunch

.....

2. i eat healthy snacks

.....

• **8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ثمانية عشر (18) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

Your healthy daily routine

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- important
- wake up
- strong

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة العامة بسبب وجود أفكار تم عرضها في النص.

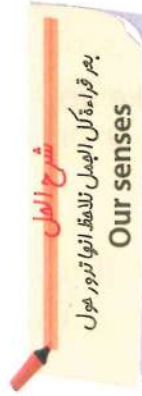
مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص نجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Senses are very important to us. Senses help us understand the world around us. We can taste delicious food with our tongue. We can touch soft and hard things with our hands. We can hear music and voices with our ears.



- This text is about ".....".
 - OR : The main / general idea of the text is about ".....".
 - OR : The text talks about ".....".
 - OR : What's the main idea of the text ?
- a. Our senses

b. Soft things
- c. Music

d. Food

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا للخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Every day, I follow the same routine. First, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. Next, I have a healthy breakfast , including milk and fruit. Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. After school, I have lunch with my family. After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy.

- This text is about ".....".
 - OR : The main / general idea of the text is about ".....".
 - OR : The text talks about ".....".
 - OR : What's the main idea of the text ?
- a. My daily routine

c. My town

b. My favorite food

d. My family

2

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٢ جملة].

1 Our five senses

We have five amazing senses^[1]. We use our five senses to learn about the world^[2]. Senses help us understand the world around us^[3]. Senses also help us stay safe^[4]. If we smell smoke, we know there's a fire^[5].

2 A healthy life

It's important for all people to have a healthy life^[6]. Having a healthy life helps us stay strong and healthy^[7]. For a healthy life, we should have healthy foods^[8]. Healthy foods give us energy for the day^[9]. Fruits and vegetables are also important for us^[10]. They give us vitamins^[11]. Walking and doing sports help people feel good^[12].

3 My daily routine

Every day, I follow the same routine^[13]. First, I wake up early and wash my face^[14]. Next, I have a healthy breakfast^[15]. Then, I go to school where I study^[16]. After that, I play sports for one hour^[17]. Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.^[18].

4 How to stay healthy

Having some healthy habits can help us stay healthy^[19]. Drinking plenty of water is important for our health^[20]. To stay healthy, sleep for nine hours every night^[21]. Getting enough sleep helps our mind stay sharp^[22].

3

Correction Notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة في المضارع البسيط Affirmative statements in present simple

- مصدر الفعل + inf. + اسم جمع / I/We / They/ You
- He/She/It / اسم مفرد + inf. + [s / es / ies]

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 The boys [playing] football every week.	play	مع الاسم الجمع نستخدم الفعل بدون إضافات في المضارع البسيط
2 She [go] to school on foot.	goes	نضيف «es» للفعل مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب [She] في زمن المضارع البسيط
3 He [study] his lesson every day.	studies	نضيف للفعل "ies" مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب [He] في زمن المضارع البسيط
4 Dad [read] a newspaper in the morning.	reads	نضيف للفعل "s" مع الاسم المفرد في زمن المضارع البسيط

Practice

معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة. Write the reason.

1 Sarah [do] exercises in the garden.	does	.....
2 I [had] breakfast with my family every day.	have	.....
3 He [wake] up early on Friday.	wakes	.....
4 Children [watches] TV in the evening.	watch	.....

اكتب التصحيح. Write the correction.

1 Adam [go] to bed early at 9:00 p.m.	.....	نضيف للفعل [es] مع الاسم المفرد [Adam]
2 I [uses] my nose to smell.	.....	مع الضمير [I] نستخدم الفعل بدون إضافات في زمن المضارع البسيط
3 My sister [help] mom in the evening.	.....	نستخدم الفعل مضاف إليه [s] مع الاسم المفرد [My sister]
4 Some children [plays] sports after school.	.....	نستخدم الفعل بدون إضافات مع الاسم الجمع [Some children]

4

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1	food - Sarah - healthy - eats.
2	brushes - He - every day - his teeth.
3	laughed at - The owner - answer - Goha's.
4	early - keeps - Sleeping - healthy - me.
5	get - for - I - dressed - school.
6	see - eyes - I - with - my.
7	drinks - water - She - plenty of.
8	through - Goha - was walking - the market.
9	use - I - to smell - my nose.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
She	helps	her mother in the kitchen.
	get dressed	
	was walking	

٢ الجملة الأمرية

1	your - Do - first - homework.
2	food - Share - your - with - friends.
3	and - lots - Eat - fruits - of - vegetables.
4	eat - Don't - many - too - sweets.

1	2	3
Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
Don't	be	greedy.

٣ الجملة الاستفهامية

1	Sarah - Who - help - does - the afternoon - in?
2	did - Why - sit - the restaurant - Goha-outside?
3	senses - do - How many - have - we?
4	can - What - Sami - hear?
5	will - What - we - today - learn?

1	2	3	4	5
Why	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
Why	does	Sarah	eat	healthy food?



Review on Unit 1

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الأولى فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

senses	الحواس
tongue	لسان
touch	يلمس
taste	يتذوق
break time	وقت الراحة
energy	طاقة
healthy habits	عادات صحية
owner	مالك
jingling	صوت رنين خفيف
share	يشارك / يتشارك
greedy	طماع / جشع
smell	رائحة / يشم
gummy	لذيذ

Pronunciation

Long vowels



feed → /i:/



plate → /eI/



home → /Ov/

Short vowels



hat → /æ/



pot → /a:/



pen → /e/

Language in use

The Present Simple Tense

★ Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

التصريف الأول للفعل [بدون إضافات] + اسم جمع - I - We - You - They

► - I go to school on foot. - We play tennis after school.

He - She - It
اسم مفرد -

التصريف
الأول
للفعل

s

or

es

or

ies

• معظم الأفعال يضاف لها [s]

• أما التى تنتهى بـ [o, x, ss, ch, sh] يضاف لها [es]

• الفعل المنتهى بـ [y] قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له [ies] مع حذف [y].

► - He flies a plane.

General Exercises | on Unit 1

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

- **1 Listen and circle the correct answer.** استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Goha was hungry, but he didn't have enough **[time - money]**.
- He smelled delicious **[pizza - soup]**.
- He sat outside the **[restaurant - city]**.
- The **[villager - owner]** asked Goha to pay for the smell.

- **2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I my tongue to taste food.
a. to use b. using c. use d. uses
- She doesn't have enough money to for her dress.
a. pay b. grow c. sit d. solve
- We can flowers in the garden with our noses.
a. taste b. touch c. smell d. hear
- When someone greedy, they want more than they need.
a. are b. is c. have d. do

- **3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

learn - senses - park - smell - taste

Today is a beautiful day. We are at the [1] on a school trip. We want to [2] more about things around us. We use our [3] to help us understand more. We can see the sunlight with our eyes. We can [4] the flowers. We can taste fruits. Our senses are amazing and work all the time.

- **4 Read the text and answer the questions.** اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

One day, a monkey saw a small bird with a broken wing. The bird could not fly. The monkey picked some leaves and made a soft bed for the bird. It gave the bird fruits to eat. The bird was happy and thanked the kind monkey. After a few days, the bird's wing got better and could fly away. The monkey was very happy that it could help.

- A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The monkey saw a bird with a broken
a. leg b. wing c. beak d. feather
- The monkey was
a. dangerous b. strong c. brave d. kind



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



clean ينظف



plant يزرع



collect يجمع



help يساعد



feed يُطعم



volunteer يتطوع

community	مجتمع	neighbors	جيران	cool	رائع / مدهش
-----------	-------	-----------	-------	------	-------------

• Extra vocabulary

trash	قمامة	street	شارع	great	عظيم / رائع
community park	حديقة مجتمعية	job	وظيفة	clothes	ملابس
friends	أصدقاء	trees	أشجار	park	حديقة عامة
bottles	زجاجات	others	الآخرون	both	كلا - كلتا
		flowers	أزهار	food	طعام

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular				Irregular			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
need	يحتاج	needed		feel	يشعر	felt	
happen	يحدث	happened		give	يعطي	gave	
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered		make	يصنع / يجعل	made	

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It's fun to + inf. [مصدر الفعل] إنه من الممتع أن

That's cool! هذا رائع!

What about ? ماذا عن ؟

feel so happy يشعر بأنه سعيد للغاية

That's nice ! هذا لطيف !

That's great ! هذا رائع !

do a great job يقوم بعمل رائع

helping hands أيدي المساعدة

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Helping the community	help - community	Amira and Adam are talking about how they help their community.
	trash - streets	Adam cleans trash from the streets with his friends.
	plant - park	Adam plants trees in the park.
	feed - cats	Adam feeds the dogs and cats.
	help - neighbors	Adam's sister helps her neighbors.
	volunteer - community park	Adam's sister volunteers at the community park.
	collect - clothes	Amira collects clothes and gives them to people who need them.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We clean from our street to help our community.
a. trees b. trash c. buildings d. lamps
- She flowers in the garden.
a. feeds b. cleans c. plants d. goes
- Mom the ducks in the morning.
a. plants b. feels c. volunteers d. feeds
- Adam happy when he gives the dogs food.
a. makes b. feels c. takes d. does
- He clothes and gives them to poor people.
a. collects b. helps c. grows d. stays
- I like the where I live with my family.
a. garden b. community c. school d. store

7. I to help my community get better.
 a. volunteer b. sleep c. exercise d. eat
8. Ms. Nadia is my She lives next door.
 a. moral b. neighbor c. community d. team
9. You a great job at the community.
 a. do b. take c. give d. make
10. Can you me collect the bottles?
 a. volunteer b. take c. feed d. help

II Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Helping Hands

أيدي المساعدة

Amira and Adam are talking about how they help their community.

أميرة وآدم يتحدثان عن كيفية مساعدة مجتمعهم.



Hello, Adam! What do you do to help our
community^[1]? مرحبًا آدم! ماذا تفعل كي تساعد مجتمعنا؟

(1) مجتمع

(2) ينظف القمامة

(3) يزرع أشجار

(4) يطعم

Hello, Amira! I **clean trash**^[2] from the streets with my friends
every Saturday. مرحبًا أميرة! أنا أنظف القمامة من الشوارع مع أصدقائي كل يوم سبت.



That's cool! Do you **plant trees**^[3]?

هذا رائع! هل تزرع أشجارًا؟

Yes, I do. I plant trees in the park.

نعم. أزرع أشجار في الحديقة.



That's nice! Do you do other things to help?

هذا لطيفًا! هل تصنع أشياء أخرى كي تساعد؟

Yes! Sometimes, I **feed**^[4] the dogs and cats. I feel so happy
when I give them food!

نعم، أحيانًا أطعم الكلاب والقطط. أشعر بأنني سعيد للغاية عندما أعطيهم الطعام!





هل أختك تساعد أيضًا ؟ Does your sister help too ?

[5] جيران

[6] يتطوع

[7] عمل رائع

[8] ملابس

[9] هذا رائع

Yes, she does! She helps our **neighbors** [5], and she **volunteers** [6] at the community park.

نعم، هي تساعد جيراننا وتتطوع في الحديقة المجتمعية.



Wow! You both do a **great job** [7]!

رائع ! أنتما تقومان بعمل رائع !

Thanks! What about you? How do you help?

شكرًا! وماذا عنك؟ كيف تساعدين؟



I collect **clothes** [8] and give them to people who need them.

أنا أقوم بجمع الملابس وأعطيها للأشخاص الذين يحتاجون إليها.



That's great [9]! When we all help, we make our community great.

هذا رائع! عندما نساعد جميعًا، نجعل مجتمعتنا عظيم.



Describe the relationship between ideas.

صف العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. What does Amira do with clothes ?

- She collects clothes and gives them to people who need them.

Practice

2. Who feeds the dogs and cats ?

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We go to the [park - museum] to help on weekends.
2. We plant flowers and [grass - trees] there.
3. We collect [trash - birds] from the park.
4. We feed the [dogs - birds].

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We flowers and trees in our garden.
a. volunteer b. plant c. feed d. do
2. My neighbors and I volunteer to help our
a. community b. clothes c. food d. senses
3. They trash from the streets.
a. grow b. stay c. keep d. clean
4. He toys and gives them to poor children.
a. to collect b. collect c. collecting d. collects

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

clothes - trash - great - community - plants

My family and I help our community. Everyone in our [1] helps. We clean [2] from the streets with our neighbors. My father [3] trees in the park. My mother and aunt Salwa collect [4] and give them to people who need them.

4 Punctuate the following.

1. they make the park nice

2. why do you help your community

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

How you help your community

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What do you do to help?

- Where do you help?

- Why do you help your community?

Community problems and solutions

Language in use



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

problems	مشكلات	traffic	حركة مرور	bin	سلة مهملات
solutions	حلول	distance	مسافة	ground	أرض
instead	بدلاً من	dirty	غير نظيف	difference	اختلاف

Extra vocabulary

anymore	بعد الآن	engines	محركات	quickly	بسرعة
fewer	أقل [عددًا]	especially	على وجه الخصوص	everywhere	في كل مكان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
reduce	يقلل	reduced	leave	يترك	left
fix	يصلح	fixed	throw	يلقي / يرمى	threw
move	يتحرك	moved	know	يعرف	knew
solve	يحل	solved	put	يضع	put
discuss	يناقش	discussed			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• make a difference	يحدث فرق	• That's right !	هذا صحيح!
• on the road	في الطريق	• look dirty	تبدو غير نظيفة
• on the ground	على الأرض	• in the morning	في الصباح
• take the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس	• instead of	بدلاً من ذلك

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Problems in the community and their solutions	solutions - community	Mona and Ali have good solutions to some problems in their community.
	cars - school bus	Ali suggests using cars less and taking the school bus instead.
	trash - bins	Mona says that people don't put trash in bins and that is a problem.
	put - everywhere	Ali says they can put new bins everywhere for everyone to use.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Trash is a big in my city.
a. park b. play c. problem d. community
- The mechanic can cars.
a. play b. design c. feed d. fix
- Think of a to the traffic problem.
a. bin b. solution c. ground d. sense
- We can take the bus of the taxi.
a. instead b. through c. near d. far
- SB** There are many cars on the
a. bin b. road c. garden d. routine
- Good people don't throw trash on the
a. bin b. air c. ground d. basket
- My idea can the problem.
a. solve b. waste c. grow d. throw
- Put trash in the to help clean the community.
a. streets b. bins c. community d. road
- The problem of happens because there are many cars on the road.
a. traffic b. rain c. ground d. water
- Cars quickly in the evening because there is less traffic.
a. grow b. move c. help d. feed

II Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Ali and Mona make a difference. على ومنى يحدثان فارقًا.



Our community has many problems, so let's talk about them.

يوجد بمجتمعنا العديد من المشاكل، لذلك هيا نتحدث عنهم.

OK ! Let's also discuss solutions to fix them.

بالطبع! دعنا نناقش أيضًا حلولًا لإصلاحهم.



The first problem is traffic. Cars don't move quickly in the morning, especially near schools.

المشكلة الأولى هي حركة المرور. لا تتحرك السيارات بسرعة في الصباح، خاصة بالقرب من المدارس.



هل تعلم كيف تُحل هذه المشكلة؟ Do you know how to solve this problem?



Yes, I think so. We don't need to use cars every day. We can take the school bus instead. There will be fewer cars on the road.

نعم، اعتقد ذلك. نحن لا نحتاج لإستخدام سيارات كل يوم. يمكننا أن نستقل أتوبيس المدرسة بدلاً من ذلك. فبذلك سيكون هناك سيارات أقل على الطريق.



That's right! The second problem is trash. Some people don't put trash in bins, so the streets look dirty.

هذا صحيح! المشكلة الثانية هي القمامة. بعض الناس لا يضعون القمامة في سلة المهملات، لذلك تبدو الشوارع غير نظيفة.



هل توجد مثل هذه المشكلة في شارعك؟ Does your street have this problem?

Not anymore. Our neighbors don't throw trash on the ground. We put new bins everywhere, everyone uses them and now our street is very clean!

لم يعد ذلك. فجيرانى لا يلقون القمامة على الأرض. نحن نضع سلات مهملات جديدة في كل مكان، ويستخدمها الجميع والآن شارعنا نظيف جداً!



That's great!

هذا رائع!

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Problems and Solutions

Reading Skill

Problems

- 1 Traffic is bad near schools.
- 2 Trash is thrown on the ground.

Solutions

- Use the school bus instead of cars.
- Put bins everywhere.

III Language in use

The Present Simple Tense

Usage : الاستخدام

► We use the present simple for daily habits and routines.

- نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن عادات أو أعمال روتينية يومية.

Formation : التكوين

1. Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع
+ التصريف الأول للفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد
+ s / es / ies + التصريف الأول للفعل

ex. We **usually play** tennis on Friday.

ex. He **watches** TV every day.

2. Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية المنفية

I / We / They / You / اسم جمع

He / She / It / اسم مفرد

do not = don't + inf. مصدر الفعل

does not = doesn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.

ex. She **doesn't need** to use cars every day.

3. Interrogative

صيغة الاستفهام

Do + I / we / they / you / اسم جمع
+ inf. + باقي السؤال ؟

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد
+ inf. + باقي السؤال ؟

Yes, + subj. + do. / No, + subj. + don't.

Yes, + subj. + does. / No, + subj. + doesn't.

ex. Do you **know** how to solve the problem ?

ex. Does your street **have** this problem ?

- Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

- Yes, she does.

- No, she doesn't.



Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They don't [comes] late.
2. He [don't] live in Siwa.
3. [Do] Ahmed have a bike?
4. She [not go] to school on Saturdays.
5. I [not like] busy places.
6. [Do] Aya play basketball? – No, she doesn't.
7. Do you [needs] any help ?
8. **SB** She [not like] pollution.
9. Do they [threw] trash on the ground?
10. My brother doesn't [works] in a hospital.

2 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. She doesn't eats unhealthy food. [.....]
2. Does Reda helps in the park? [.....]
3. We doesn't like apples, but we love bananas. [.....]
4. Does you take long showers? [.....]
5. Do you had breakfast at home? [.....]

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She like fast food.
a. don't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. isn't
2. you like ice cream ?
a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Was
3. Do you your room every day ?
a. cleans b. cleaning c. cleaned d. clean
4. I get up early on the weekend.
a. doesn't b. don't c. am not d. haven't
5. He doesn't the guitar.
a. plays b. playing c. play d. played

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Trash is a big problem in my
a. house b. garden c. community d. school
- The streets look
a. beautiful b. dirty c. wide d. small
- Ashraf is our
a. teacher b. neighbor c. doctor d. guide
- We can put new everywhere.
a. lights b. trees c. bags d. bins

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- SB** Some people put trash in bins.
a. hasn't b. aren't c. doesn't d. don't
- We have good solutions to the problems.
a. waste b. solve c. move d. have
- SB** Many streets look because of the trash.
a. wonderful b. dirty c. clean d. awesome
- The traffic move fast because there're too many cars.
a. haven't b. doesn't c. isn't d. don't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

instead – cars – traffic – problem – community

Our community is an amazing place to live in. However, there is a [1]
Our community has a problem of [2] To solve it, we think we don't
need to use [3] every day. We can take the school bus [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Trash is one of the biggest problems in my neighborhood. It is a very dangerous problem because it can make many people ill. This problem happens because people don't put trash in bins. They throw the trash on the ground so the streets look dirty. Solving this problem isn't easy. So my parents get together with our neighbors and find a solution to this problem. We will put bins everywhere.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The opposite of the underlined word "dirty" is ".....".
a. harmful b. bad c. clean d. fast
- This text is about ".....".
a. Neighbors b. Trash c. Clothes d. Healthy food

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is trash a dangerous problem ?

.....

4. How can they solve this problem ?

.....

• **5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. Do you [got] up early ?

2. Our teacher [don't] speak Arabic in the classroom.

3. We [doesn't] need new clothes.

4. [Do] she walk to school every day?

• **6 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.**

1. Do they volunteer in the community? - Yes, they don't. [.....]

2. No, she doesn't has any brothers. [.....]

3. They doesn't forget their homework. [.....]

4. I don't leaves the water running when I brush my teeth. [.....]

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

1. Yes I use the trash bins

.....

2. do cars move quickly in the morning

.....

• **8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A problem in your community

Guiding elements :

- traffic

- cars

- school bus

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

► Egypt : My culture
► Pronunciation



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

the Delta	دلتا النيل	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلي	modern	حديث
culture	ثقافة	decorations	زينة / زخارف	region	منطقة / إقليم
festival	مهرجان / عيد	events	أحداث / مناسبات	outfit	رداء خاص [ملابس]
underwater	مياه جوفية	turban	عمامة	crafts	حرف يدوية
celebration	إحتفال	traditions	تقاليد	designs	تصميمات

• Extra vocabulary

special	خاص / مميز	rice	أرز	carpets	سجاد
north	الشمال	cotton	قطن	galabeya	جلابية
south	الجنوب	factories	مصانع	harvest	حصاد
spring	فصل الربيع	sugar cane	قصب السكر	pants	بنطلون
life	حياة	pottery	فخار - صناعة الفخار	stylish	أنيق
Nubia	النوبة	traditional	تقليدي	bright	ساطع / لامع

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	يُنسج
paint	يدهن	celebrated	يرتدى
		wear	wove
			wore

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• known for	مشهور بـ	• for special events	للمناسبات الخاصة
• proud of	فخور بـ	• by hand	يدوي
• even though	على الرغم من	• tell stories	يحكي قصصًا
• part of	جزء من	• have differences	لديه اختلافات
• in bright colors	بألوان زاهية	• in a city / village	في مدينة / قرية
• have special designs	لديها تصميمات مميزة		

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Culture in Upper Egypt and the Delta	regions - the Delta	Egypt has two special regions: the Delta and Upper Egypt.
	celebrate	In the Delta, they celebrate the Spring Festival.
	factories - crafts	In the Delta, many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts.
	sugar cane - harvest	In Upper Egypt, people celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals.
	pottery - carpets	In Upper Egypt, they make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand.
	paint - designs	In Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special designs.
	galabeyas - turbans	In Upper Egypt, men wear galabeyas and sometimes turbans.
	pants - shirts	In the Delta, men wear modern clothes like pants and shirts.
	share - traditions	Upper Egypt and the Delta share many of the same traditions.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We Eid Al-Fitr with our families.
a. build b. celebrate c. grow d. put
- Our house looks beautiful with these
a. decorations b. songs c. traditions d. factories
- Egyptians eat colorful eggs in the Spring
a. Culture b. Outfit c. Festival d. Craft
- Weaving carpets is a famous in Egypt.
a. craft b. clock c. festival d. culture
- They make juice from sugar
a. corn b. cone c. cane d. coin
- Some people colorful carpets by hand.
a. wear b. weave c. grow d. tell

7. Ancient Egyptian houses had beautiful
a. designs b. clothes c. turbans d. regions
8. Mobiles are inventions.
a. proud b. old c. ancient d. modern
9. We wear special in festivals.
a. harvest b. traditions c. outfits d. flags
10. Girls like to wear dresses.
a. craft b. stylish c. proud d. strong

II Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Egypt - My culture

مصر - ثقافتها

Egypt has two special regions: the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its traditions and culture.



تمتلك مصر منطقتين متميزتين: دلتا النيل في الشمال والوجه القبلي في الجنوب. لكل منطقة تقاليدها وثقافتها الخاصة بها.

In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts. Women are known for making clothes.



في منطقة الدلتا، يحتفل الناس بعيد الربيع بالزينة الملونة وأطعمة خاصة. يقوم المزارعون بزراعة الأرز والقطن. يعمل العديد من الناس في المصانع ويصنعون حرف يدوية جميلة. تشتهر النساء بصناعة الملابس.

In Upper Egypt, life is different. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special designs.

في الوجه القبلي، تكون الحياة مختلفة. يحتفل الناس بحصاد قصب السكر من خلال مهرجانات كبيرة ويقومون بصناعة الفخار وينسجون السجاد اليدوي الملون. تغني العائلات أغاني تراثية وتحكي القصص القديمة. ففي بعض الأماكن مثل النوبة، تُدهن المنازل بألوان زاهية ولها تصاميم خاصة.

In the Delta region, men wear galabeyas or modern clothes like pants and shirts. Women wear stylish dresses or traditional outfits for special events.

في منطقة الدلتا، يرتدى الرجال الجلابيب أو ملابس عصرية مثل البناتيل والقمصان وترتدى النساء فساتين أنيقة أو ملابس تقليدية في المناسبات الخاصة.

In Upper Egypt, men also wear galabeyas and sometimes turbans. Women wear colorful dresses.

في الوجه القبلي، يرتدى الرجال الجلابيب أيضًا وأحيانًا العمامم. وترتدى النساء الفساتين الملونة.

Even though the two places have some differences, they share many of the same traditions. Egyptians are proud of their culture and love to celebrate it together!

على الرغم من وجود بعض الاختلافات بين المنطقتين إلا أنهما يشتركان في العديد من نفس التقاليد. فالمصريون فخورون بثقافتهم ويحبون الاحتفال بها معًا!

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn

1. Where is the Delta ?

- It's in the north of Egypt.

Practice

2. Where do people grow sugar cane?

III

Pronunciation



&



► The letter "f" makes the /f/ sound.

► The /f/ sound is voiceless → your throat doesn't vibrate.

- الصوت /f/ هو صوت ليس به اهتزاز ← لا تهتز فيه حنجرتك (أحبالك الصوتية الموجودة بداخل الحلق).



factory مصنع



forest غابة



frog ضفدع



flag علم



fish سمكة



- ▶ The letter "v" makes the /v/ sound.
 - ▶ The /v/ sound is voiced → your throat vibrates.
- الصوت /v/ هو صوت اهتزازي ← تهتز فيه حنجرتك [أحبالك الصوتية] عند نطقه.



van شاحنة



vest سترة



violin آلة الكمان



view منظر طبيعي



Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

Read and sort the words.

forest - violin - flag - vest

/v/

/f/

IV

Language in use

A prefix

is a small group of letters added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning.

البادئة : هو مجموعة صغيرة من الحروف تضاف في بداية الكلمة لتغيير معناها.

dis- = not
or opposite

like يحب	→	dislike يكره
appear يظهر	→	disappear يختفي
honest أمين	→	dishonest غير أمين

il- = not

legal قانوني	→	illegal غير قانوني
logical منطقي	→	illogical غير منطقي

ir- = not

regular منتظم	→	irregular غير منتظم
responsible مسؤول	→	irresponsible غير مسؤول
relevant مرتبط / ذو صلة بـ	→	irrelevant ليس ذو صلة / غير مرتبط بـ



Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Read and complete the sentences using the opposite [prefixes] of the given word.

1. **SB** It is [legal] to drive here.
2. **SB** He [likes] loud noise.
3. The verb "see" has an [regular] past form.
4. **SB** The students are [responsible]. Their classroom is very dirty.
5. The plane [appeared] behind the clouds.
6. It's [legal] to use the mobile when you drive.
7. My grandpa [likes] noise and pollution.
8. Rain is [regular] in the dry desert.
9. Your question is [relevant]. We are not talking about that.
10. The children are [responsible]. They waste their time.

2 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. Your answer is relevant to the question. It isn't correct. [.....]
2. Regular sleep is bad for your health. [.....]
3. Stars appear in the morning. [.....]
4. We like football, but we like tennis. [.....]
5. It's legal to park in front of the hospital. [.....]

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. **SB** What Omar says is It doesn't make sense غير منطقي.
a. illogical b. appear c. dishonest d. dislike
2. **SB** The teacher says my question is to the lesson.
a. legal b. irrelevant c. appear d. irresponsible
3. **SB** The cat always after eating all the food.
a. irregular b. disappears c. illegal d. dishonest
4. His answer is It is not correct.
a. honest b. logical c. illogical d. legal
5. It is to take money that is not ours.
a. legal b. responsible c. illegal d. relevant

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

1. - orest 2. - est 3. - lag 4. - iolin

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Egypt has two special : the Delta and Upper Egypt.
a. regions b. flags c. traditions d. events
- He is of his famous father.
a. greedy b. honest c. proud d. smart
- We the floor with beautiful carpets.
a. covers b. doesn't cover c. hasn't cover d. cover
- Farmers the cotton from fields by hand.
a. doesn't harvest b. harvests c. harvest d. harvesting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

colorful - Upper - traditions - galabeyas - different

I live in Sohag. It is a big governorate in [1] Egypt. Life in Upper Egypt is [2] to life in Cairo. We have our own [3] and culture. Our clothes are different. Men wear [4] and women wear colorful dresses.

4 Read and answer the questions.

Egypt has two special regions : the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its traditions and culture. In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts. Women are known for making clothes.

A. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

- The Delta is in the south. []
- Each region has its traditions and culture. []

B. Answer the following questions.

- What do farmers grow ?
- How many regions does Egypt have ?

• **5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. It's [legal] to smoke in hospitals.
2. We [like] pizza, it's unhealthy.
3. The butterfly [appeared]. I can't see it.
4. Some verbs are regular and some are [regular].

• **6 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.**

1. He is honest. He doesn't tell the truth. [.....]
2. She got zero because her answer was relevant. [.....]
3. It is responsible to throw trash on the ground. [.....]
4. No one likes his idea. It's logical. [.....]

• **7 Rearrange to make a sentence.**

1. proud - Egyptians - of - are - culture - their.

2. Nubia - special - Houses - have - in - designs.

3. festivals - do - What - you - celebrate ?

• **8 Punctuate the following.**

1. my father works in a cotton factory

2. which part of Egypt are you from

• **9 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your community's traditions

Guiding elements :

- Nubia

- paint

- pottery



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

diary	مفكرة	stalls	اكشاك	rich	غني / ثري
neighborhood	حي	train station	محطة قطار	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
history	تاريخ	air pollution	تلوث الهواء	information	معلومات
wooden	خشبي	safely	بأمان	ways	طرق

• Extra vocabulary

stories	قصص	supermarket	متجر	fresh	طازج
amazing	مدهش	market	سوق	fruits	فاكهة
vegetables	خضروات	tall	طويل [القامة]	gardens	حدائق خاصة
together	معًا	building	مبنى	photos	صور [فوتوغرافية]
quiet	هادئ	busy	مزدحم	poster	ملصق - فعال

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
walk يمشي	walked	sell يبيع	sold
cycle يركب دراجة	cycled	keep يحفظ	kept
		build يبني	built

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• still stand	مازالت قائمة	• proud to + inf.	فخور أن
• make a poster	يصنع ملصق	• Yours truly	مع خالص تحياتي

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Our community's history	stories - history	Grandpa told Hana amazing stories about their community's history.
	neighborhood - stalls	Their neighborhood had an old market with wooden stalls.
	sell - vegetables	People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning.
	gardens	In their neighborhood, there were small houses with beautiful gardens.
	play - safely	Children played safely in the streets.
	school - stand	People helped to build the school that still stands today.
Let's end air pollution	ways - stop	There are many ways to stop air pollution.
	cycle - plant	Walk or cycle to school and plant trees in your community.
	plastic - clean	Use less plastic and keep your community clean.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- They buy fresh vegetables from the
a. park b. station c. market d. cinema
- The post office is a big
a. building b. street c. photo d. story
- This box is made of wood. It is
a. plastic b. wooden c. funny d. metal
- We take the train from the train
a. station b. garden c. building d. farm
- Healthy food is in vitamins.
a. honest b. rich c. greedy d. legal
- Our old school still today.
a. builds b. stands c. designs d. grows
- The shopping mall was yesterday. There were many people.
a. closed b. calm c. quiet d. busy
- tells us about things in the past.
a. English b. Math c. Music d. History
- Plant trees to stop air
a. smells b. community c. pollution d. routine
- I can't to the park, my bike is broken.
a. speak b. cycle c. wake d. use

II Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Diary Entry

Pop Quiz

تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Date

March 15, 2025

Dear **diary**^[1], → Greeting

Today, Grandpa told me **amazing stories**^[2] about our community's **history**^[3]. Fifty years ago, our **neighborhood**^[4] was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful old market with **wooden stalls**^[5]. People sold fresh fruits and **vegetables**^[6] every morning.

The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful **gardens**^[7]. Everyone knew their **neighbors**^[8], and children played **safely**^[9] in the streets. There was even a small train station where our park is now!

Grandpa showed me old photos. I saw the old school that **still stands**^[10] today. He said people helped to build it **together**^[11] many years ago. It makes me proud to know our community has such a **rich history**^[12].

Yours truly,
Hana → Closing



Details

- (1) يومياتي
- (2) قصص مذهشة
- (3) تاريخ
- (4) حي
- (5) اكشاك خشبية
- (6) خضروات
- (7) حدائق
- (8) جيران
- (9) بأمان
- (10) مازال قائما
- (11) معا
- (12) تاريخ ثري

اليوم أخبرني جدي قصصًا رائعة عن تاريخ مجتمعنا. منذ خمسون عام كان الحي الخاص بنا مختلفًا جدًا! حيث يوجد المتجر الكبير الآن، كان هناك سوق جميل فيه اكشاك خشبية، كان الناس يبيعون فيه الفواكه والخضروات الطازجة كل صباح. لم يكن هناك مباني شاهقة في ذلك الوقت. بدلًا من ذلك، كانت هناك منازل صغيرة بها حدائق جميلة. كان الجميع يعرف جيرانهم، وكان الأطفال يلعبون بأمان في الشوارع. كان هناك أيضًا محطة قطار صغيرة، حيث يوجد المنتزه الخاص بنا الآن!

عرض لي جدي صورًا قديمة. رأيت المدرسة القديمة التي لا تزال قائمة اليوم. وقال إن الناس ساعدوا في بنائها معًا منذ سنوات عديدة. فذلك يجعلني فخورة بتاريخ مجتمعنا الثري.

مع خالص تحياتي،

هنا

III

Writing Skill

★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

How to write a diary entry

كيفية كتابة يوميات

Steps of writing a diary

خطوات كتابة يوميات

1

Start with the date

Write the date at the top of your page.

ابدأ بالتاريخ

اكتب التاريخ في أعلى الصفحة الخاصة بك.

2

Write a greeting

It can be "Dear diary," or "Hello diary",

اكتب التحية

من الممكن أن تكون "Dear diary" أو "Hello diary"

When writing a diary, you should

3

Add details

Who you talked to, what you heard, and how you felt.

اضف تفاصيل

إلى من تحدثت، ماذا سمعت وكيف شعرت.

4

End with a closing

Finish your diary with "Yours truly, and your name."

أنهى بخاتمة

أنهى يومياتك بـ "مع خالص تحياتي ثم اسمك".



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

• Write a diary entry about your community's history.

Guiding elements :

- What did you learn about your community's past ?
- What was different then ?
- What buildings or places changed ?

Date :

Dear diary,

.....

.....

Yours truly,

Name :

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Ways to stop Air Pollution

طرق لانهاء تلوث الهواء

Walk or cycle
to school.
سر أو اركب دراجتك
للمدرسة.

Let's Stop Air Pollution
هيا ننهي تلوث الهواء

Plant trees in your
community.
ازرع أشجار في مجتمعك.



Solutions



Use less plastic.
استخدم بلاستيك بشكل
أقل.



Keep your
community clean.
حافظ على مجتمعك نظيف.



★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

• To make a poster, it should include:

• عند تصميم ملصقًا، يجب أن يتضمن:

A clear title
عنوان واضح

Pictures or
drawings
صور أو رسومات

2 - 3 solutions
حليّن أو ثلاثة حلول

General Exercises

on Lessons 4 & 5

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Grandpa told me about our family's history.
a. stalls b. stories c. projects d. senses
- The where we live is very good.
a. neighborhood b. history c. moral d. diary
- to school to stop air pollution from cars.
a. Walk b. Walks c. Walked d. Walking
- We a poster with colorful photos.
a. to design b. design c. designs d. designing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

community – song – tells – traditional – history

I love my grandma. When we visit her, she [1] us interesting stories. She knows a lot about our community's [2] She sometimes asks us some questions after the story, or she sings a [3] We learn a lot about our [4] from our grandma's stories.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

- SB Do you [knew] how to solve this problem ?
- Cars [not move] quickly near the river.
- The dog took the toy and [appeared]. We couldn't find it.
- Some people [like] frogs because they look strange.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

- He likes chocolate. It is unhealthy. [.....]
- It is legal to smoke in hospitals. [.....]
- Does they play tennis in the club ? [.....]
- Does Hana goes to school on Fridays ? - No, she doesn't. [.....]

• **5** Reorder to make sentences.

1. fresh – morning – People – fruits – sold – every.

2. or – walk – should – You – cycle – school – to.

• **6** Punctuate the following.

1. grandma showed me her old photo

2. what makes you proud of your community's history

• **7** Write a diary entry of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements. Your name is Soha.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your community's history

Guiding elements :

- buildings

- stories

- proud

Handwriting practice area with a blue header and pink background. It contains multiple horizontal dotted lines for writing a diary entry.

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة العامة بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في النص.

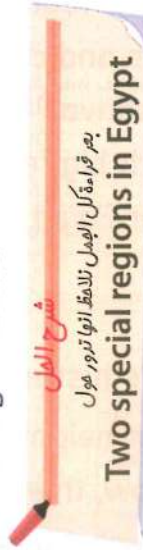
مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read the text and learn how to answer :

Egypt has two special regions : the Delta and Upper Egypt. In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. In Upper Egypt, life is different. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals.



The text is about " " .
Or The main/general idea of the text is about " " .

Or The text talks about " " .

Or What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. Festivals

b. Sea animals

c. Two special regions in Egypt

d. Desert plants

Step 2

اقرأ و قم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوات الأولى.

Read the text and answer the questions :

Today, grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, our neighborhood was very different! There was a beautiful old market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning. The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played safely in the streets.

The text is about " " .

Or The main/general idea of the text is about " " .

Or The text talks about " " .

Or What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. Community's history

b. Traffic

c. Places

d. Food

2

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤ جملة].

1 Helping our community

It's good to help our community^[1]. We can clean trash from the streets^[2]. We can also plant trees in the parks^[3]. We can feed the dogs and cats^[4]. We can volunteer at the community park^[5]. We can collect clothes and give them to people who need them^[6].

2 Problems and solutions in our community

There are many problems in our community^[7]. The first problem is traffic^[8]. Cars don't move quickly in the morning^[9]. So we can use less cars every day and buses instead^[10]. The second problem is trash^[11]. Some people don't put trash in bins, so the streets look dirty^[12]. It's good to put new bins everywhere so that people don't throw trash on the ground^[13].

3 Culture in Egypt

Egypt has two special regions : the Delta and Upper Egypt^[14]. Each region has its traditions and culture^[15]. In the Delta region, people celebrate the Spring Festival^[16]. In Upper Egypt, people celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals^[17]. In the Delta, farmers grow rice and cotton^[18]. In Upper Egypt, people make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand^[19].

4 Our community's history

Many years ago, our neighborhood was different^[20]! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful old market with wooden stalls^[21]. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning^[22]. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played safely in the streets^[23]. There was even a small train station where our park is now^[24].

3

Correction Notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء
- ◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Review

Negative statements in the Present Simple Tense:	الجملة الخبرية المنفية في المضارع البسيط :
He/She/It / اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf.	باقي الجملة .
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + don't + inf.	باقي الجملة .
Interrogative in the Present Simple Tense :	صيغة الاستفهام في زمن المضارع البسيط :
Do / Does + subject + inf. + ?	باقي السؤال ؟
The prefix [dis - il - ir] = not like → dislike	البادئة
legal → illegal	
regular → irregular	

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 She [don't] help her mother.	doesn't	نستخدم [doesn't] مع الفاعل المفرد في النفي
2 [Does] cars move quickly?	Do	نستخدم [Do] في السؤال مع الفاعل الجمع
3 Amira and Adam [doesn't] clean the trash.	don't	نستخدم [don't] مع الفاعل الجمع في النفي .
4 Nada [likes] pizza. It is unhealthy.	dislikes	نستخدم البادئة [dis-] مع الفعل لتعطي معنى [not]

Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

Write the reason.

1 It is [legal] to park in front of the hospital.	illegal	.....
2 [Does] we use bins everywhere?	Do	.....
3 Cars don't [moves] quickly near schools.	move	.....
4 Some people [doesn't] use trash bins.	don't	.....

Write the correction.

◀ اكتب التصحيح.

1 [Does] you volunteer at the community park?	.....	الجملة في صيغة سؤال والفاعل [you]
2 He [don't] throw trash in the bin.	.....	الجملة في صيغة النفي والفاعل مفرد غائب [he] في زمن المضارع البسيط
3 [Do] she go to school on foot?	.....	الجملة صيغة سؤال والفاعل مفرد [she] في زمن المضارع البسيط
4 Does he [plays] tennis on Fridays?	.....	نستخدم الفعل بدون إضافات في صيغة السؤال في زمن المضارع البسيط

4

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

الجملة الخبرية

1	problems - community - Our - many - has.
2	Egypt - the south - Upper - in - is.
3	stylish - wear - dresses - Women .
4	culture - proud of - are - Egyptians - their.
5	helps - traffic - The bus - reduce.
6	the park - They - Friday - clean - on.
7	two - regions - Egypt - special - has.
8	feed - in - We - the dogs - the street.
9	fruits - fresh - morning - People - every - sold.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
We	help	our neighbors.
Our community		
	helps	
	has	

الجملة الأمرية

1	less - Use - plastic.
2	trees - your - Plant - in - community.
3	your - clean - Keep - community.
4	bins - Put - everywhere.

1	2	3
Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
Don't	throw	trash on the ground.
	Keep	

الجملة الاستفهامية

1	your - help - Does - sister?
2	he - What - plant - does?
3	with - your - you - family - How - celebrate - do?
4	plant - Do - trees - you?
5	Amira - does - What - with - clothes - do ?

1	2	3	4	5
كلمة استفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
How	do	you	help	her ?
	does			
		you		



Review on Unit 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

problem	مشكلة
solution	حل
traffic	حركة المرور
fix	يصلح
trash	قمامة
bin	سلة مهملات
reduce	يقلل
region	منطقة / اقليم
decoration	زينة
festival	احتفال
weave	ينسج
proud of	فخور بـ

Pronunciation



Language in use

The Present Simple Tense in the negative & interrogative

زمن المضارع البسيط فى حالتى النفى والسؤال

[1] Negative Statement

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

I / We / They / You / اسم جمع + don't + inf.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf.

ex. She **doesn't need** to use cars every day.

[2] Interrogative

صيغة الاستفهام

Do + I / we / they / you / اسم جمع + inf. ?

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf. ?

ex. **Do you know** how to solve this problem ?

General Exercises | on Unit 2

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the following questions.

1. How many regions does Egypt have ?

2. Where is the Delta ?

3. What does each region have ?

4. What are Egyptians proud of ?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She to help in the community park for free.

a. don't volunteer

b. volunteers

c. volunteering

d. volunteer

2. Put your bag on the It's very heavy.

a. ground

b. air

c. traffic

d. sound

3. We clothes and give them to people who need them.

a. collect

b. help

c. grow

d. stay

4. Some people weave colorful carpets by hand.

a. hasn't

b. don't

c. doesn't

d. isn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

volunteer - traffic - buses - move - cycle

Our community has many problems. One of these problems is [1]
Cars don't [2] quickly in the morning, especially near schools.
Some people think we can solve this problem. We should take public
transportation, like the metro and [3] We can also [4]
or walk to near places.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

March 15, 2025

Dear diary,

Today, Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, our neighborhood was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful old market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning there.

The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played safely in the streets. There was even a small train station where our park is now! Grandpa showed me old photos.

Yours truly,

Hana

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about "Our".
a. Egyptian food b. community's history
c. traditional clothes d. beautiful school
2. The opposite of the underlined word "old" is ".....".
a. new b. different c. huge d. lazy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did people sell fresh fruits and vegetables ?
.....

4. What did Grandpa show Hana ?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. **SB** Some people don't [**puts**] trash in bins.
2. [Do] Ehab go running in the morning ?
3. Do you [**feeds**] the fish every day ?
4. Shaza doesn't [**uses**] plastic bottles.

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

How to stop air pollution

Guiding elements :

plastic

- cycle

- trees

The Story

7 A. Read and circle the correct answer.

1. Wanda is a/an girl in a small school.
a. busy b. angry c. late d. quiet
2. Wanda wore the same blue dress every day.
a. faded b. dark c. colorful d. light

B. Answer the following questions.

1. Who annoyed Wanda every morning ?
.....

2. Why did Maddie stay quiet ?
.....

UNIT

3

Animals in Our World

الحيوانات فى عالمنا

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Describe animals and their daily habits
- وصف الحيوانات وعاداتهم اليومية
- Use comparative adjectives to compare different animals
- استخدام صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين الحيوانات المختلفة

Reading

- Identify animals' habits in a simple text
- التعرف على عادات الحيوانات فى نص بسيط
- Identify a short story with a moral lesson to get the main idea
- التعرف على قصة قصيرة تحتوى على مغزى أخلاقى للحصول على الفكرة الرئيسية

- Discuss the moral lessons in a short story

- مناقشة الدروس المستفادة من قصة قصيرة

Listening

- Understand basic conversations about animals
- فهم محادثات بسيطة عن الحيوانات
- Discriminate between the consonant blends /fr/ , /dr/ , /pl/ and /pl/ , /dr/ , /fr/
- التمييز بين مزيج الحروف /fr/ , /dr/ , /pl/ و /pl/ , /dr/ , /fr/

Writing

- Draft a basic report about endangered animals
- صياغة تقرير بسيط عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض
- Plan a research project about a forest animal
- تخطيط مشروع بحثى عن حيوان يعيش فى الغابة





I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

Animals

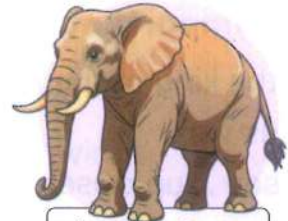
حيوانات



lion أسد



monkey قرد



elephant فيل



giraffe زرافة



zebra حمار وحشي



bear دب

• Adjectives

striped	مخطط [به خطوط]	spotted	منقط	interesting	شيق
sharp	حاد	thick	كثيف / سميك	heavy	ثقيل

tail	ذيل	forest guide	مرشد في الغابة	claws	مخالب
leaves	أوراق الشجر	fur	فراء [شعر كثيف]	neck	رقبة
forest park	منتزة الغابة / غابة مخصصة للتنزه	coat	الغطاء الخارجي [لجسم الحيوان]	trunk	خرطوم الفيل

• Extra vocabulary

visitors	زوار	gray	لون رمادي	TV program	برنامج تليفزيوني
body	جسم	sure	بالتأكيد		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited	know	يعرف	knew
watch	يشاهد	watched	catch	يصطاد	caught
hunt	يصطاد [حيوان]	hunted	run	يجري	ran
climb	يتسلق	climbed	drink	يشرب	drank
spray	يرش	sprayed			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the king of the jungle land	ملك الغابة	work as	يعمل كـ
as well	أيضاً	at night	ليلاً
see ... up close	يرى عن قرب	during the day	أثناء النهار
in groups	في مجموعات		

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A day at the forest park	guide - visitors	The forest guide shows visitors the animals at the forest park.
	monkeys - trees	The visitors see monkeys climbing trees.
	lions - night	Lions often hunt at night.
	giraffes - leaves	Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The fisherman many fish in the river.
a. climbs b. runs c. drinks d. catches
- The lion can zebras.
a. collect b. feed c. hunt d. help
- are very good at climbing trees.
a. Elephants b. Giraffes c. Birds d. Monkeys
- The forest shows visitors the animals at the forest park.
a. guide b. engineer c. police d. doctor

5. The is big and gray.
 a. elephant b. monkey c. giraffe d. lion
6. **SB** Giraffes eat from the tall trees.
 a. birds b. fur c. leaves d. meat
7. **SB** The zebra has a coat.
 a. striped b. spotted c. colorful d. yellow
8. She is watching a TV about animals.
 a. book b. match c. program d. map
9. The monkey has a long
 a. neck b. tail c. truck d. claw
10. The bear has sharp
 a. feathers b. claws c. beaks d. wings

II Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

A Day at the Forest Park

يوم في منتزه الغابة

Pop Quiz

تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Omar and Nadia are talking about animals at the forest park.

تتحدث عمرو ونادية عن الحيوانات في منتزه الغابة.

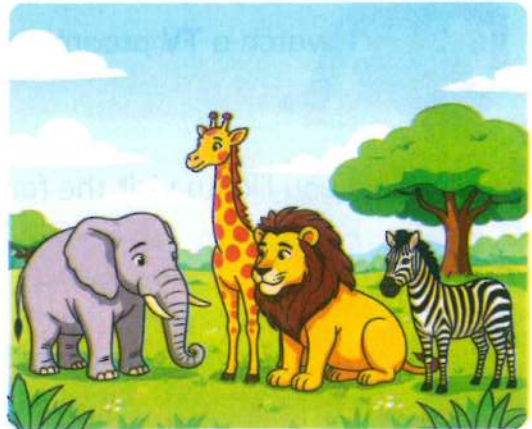


Hi, Nadia! What does your dad do at the forest park?

مرحبًا نادية! ما هي وظيفة والدك في منتزه الغابة؟

He works as a forest guide.
He shows visitors the animals.

يعمل والدي كمرشد بالغابة. فهو يساعد الزوار على التعرف على الحيوانات.



Do you usually go with him?

هل عادة تذهبن مع والدك؟

Sometimes.

أحيانًا.





What animals do visitors see ?

ما الحيوانات التي يراها الزوار ؟

Lots of them! They see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees.

يرى الزوار الكثير من الحيوانات ! فهم يرون الأفال تشرب المياه والقروء تتسلق الأشجار.



That's interesting! Do they see lions, too ?

هذا ممتع! هل يرى الزوار الأسود أيضًا ؟

Yes, and giraffes as well.

نعم، بالإضافة إلى رؤيتهم للزرافات.



Lions often hunt at night and sleep during the day. Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.

الأسود في الأغلب تصطاد ليلاً وتنام أثناء النهار. الزراف تأكل أوراق الشجر من الأشجار الطويلة.

That's right! How do you know all of this ?

هذا صحيح! كيف تعرف كل هذا؟



I watch a TV program about animals.

انا اشاهد برنامج تليفزيوني عن الحيوانات.

Would you like to visit the forest park ?

هل ترغب في زيارة منتزه الغابة ؟



Sure! It must be amazing to see all those animals up close.

بالتأكيد ! لابد أن رؤية كل هذه الحيوانات عن قرب أمر مذهن.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

Learn

1. What do giraffes eat ?

- Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.

Practice

2. When do lions sleep ?

.....

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

1. The giraffe is tall and has a long neck. It eats leaves from trees up high. It has a spotted coat.

الزرافة هي حيوان طويل وله رقبة طويلة. تأكل الزرافة الأوراق من الأشجار المرتفعة. الزرافة لديها غطاء منقط على جسمها.



2. The lion is the king of the jungle land; it often hunts animals at night. It has yellow fur.

الأسد هو ملك الغابة. يقوم الأسد بصيد الحيوانات غالباً في الليل. لديه فراء أصفر اللون.



3. The bear has thick fur and sharp claws. It catches fish.

الدب له فراء كثيف ومخالب حادة. إنه يصطاد السمك.



4. The monkey is small and has a long tail. It climbs trees.

القرود صغير الحجم وله ذيل طويل. إنه يتسلق الأشجار.



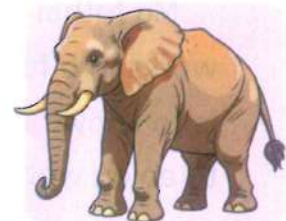
5. The zebra has a striped coat. It runs in groups.

الحمار الوحشي له غطاء مخطط. إنه يجري في مجموعات.



6. The elephant is big and gray. It uses its trunk to spray water on its body.

الفيل كبير الحجم ورمادي اللون. يستخدم خرطوممه ليقوم برش الماء على جسده.



General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Are bears wild or pet ?

.....

2. What kind of fur do bears have ?

.....

3. Why are bears dangerous ?

.....

4. What is the name of a baby bear ?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The is the king of the jungle land.

a. zebra b. bear c. elephant d. lion

2. The giraffe has a coat.

a. striped b. black c. spotted d. gray

3. The elephant its trunk to drink water.

a. to use b. using c. use d. uses

4. Some animals thick fur.

a. does b. has c. doesn't have d. don't have

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

climb - close - park - guide - visitors

My father's job is very interesting. He is a forest [1]..... He works in a forest [2]..... There are a lot of animals there. His job is to show [3]..... the animals. Many people visit the forest park to enjoy watching the animals up [4].....

• **4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Elephants are the largest animals on land. They live in Africa and Asia. They have large ears and a long trunk. They use their trunk to drink, eat and spray water on their bodies. Elephants eat leaves and grass. Elephants can live for up to 60-70 years. A baby elephant can weigh 120 kg.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "large" is"".
a. young b. old c. big d. small
2. Elephants use their to drink water.
a. teeth b. tails c. trunk d. toes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

4. What do elephants eat?
.....

• **5 Rearrange to make sentences.**

1. have - Giraffes - long - necks.
.....

2. has - The zebra - coat - a striped.
.....

3. do - eat - What - giraffes ?
.....

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

1. when do lions often hunt
.....

2. it's amazing to see animals up close
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of [18-24] words using the following guiding elements.**

Your favorite animal

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- giraffe - leaves - coat

► Taking care of animals
► Language in use



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

pet	حيوان أليف	attention	اهتمام / عناية	cage	قفص
vet	طبيب بيطري	wild animals	الحيوانات البرية	challenges	تحديات/صعوبات
forest officer	حارس الغابة	home	موطن	wild	البرية
spaces	مساحات	owner	مالك		

• Adjectives

new	جديد	safe	آمن	different	مختلف
fresh	طازج	special	خاص / مميز	kind	عطوف
clean	نظيف	simple	بسيط		

• Extra vocabulary

care	رعاية	rabbit	أرنب	cities	مدن
health	صحة	advice	نصيحة	life - lives	حياة - حيوات

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed	feed	يطعم	fed
reach	يصل إلى	reached	teach	يعلم	taught
check	يفحص	checked	keep	يحافظ على	kept
face	يواجه	faced			
protect	يحمي	protected			
create	ينشئ	created			
avoid	يتجنب	avoided			
exercise	يتدرب	exercised			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

acts of kindness	أعمال طيبة / مواقف إنسانية	move around	يتجول / يتحرك
keep a rabbit	يربي أرنب	care for = take care of	يعتني بـ

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Helping animals	stay - safe	Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe.
	care - live	Each animal needs special care to live well.
	homes - cities	Wild animals' homes are getting smaller because of new cities.
	pets - owner	Pets need daily care from their owners.
	animals - kindness	Everyone can help protect animals by showing kindness for them.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Elephants need big to move around.
a. food b. care c. spaces d. water
- Vets check animals' to keep them healthy.
a. kindness b. health c. voice d. challenges
- Forest work hard to protect animals' homes.
a. insects b. animals c. officers d. birds
- Our teacher asked us a question to get our
a. kindness b. attention c. book d. case
- Pets need daily from their owners.
a. care b. information c. cages d. tanks
- Noha faces many so she has a difficult life.
a. cities b. cages c. challenges d. hotels
- Who is the of this dog?
a. challenge b. owner c. habit d. habitat
- Animals need a place to live.
a. safe b. high c. brave d. slow
- Giraffes need tall trees to their food.
a. reach b. make c. build d. feed
- Lions live inside in the zoo.
a. mountains b. forests c. cages d. rivers

II

Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz

تدرب على 11 من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Helping Animals

مساعدة الحيوانات

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs **special**^[1] care to live well.

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger **spaces**^[2] than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets often **check**^[3] their health.

Wild animals face different challenges. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. They need **clean water**^[4] and safe places to live. **Forest officers**^[5] now work harder than before to protect these animals and their homes.

Pets need **daily care**^[6] from their owners. Dogs need **exercise**^[7]. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables, and they are healthier than other animals. Birds need cleaner cages than other animals.

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small **acts of kindness**^[8] make our world better. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives happier and healthier.



[6] عناية يومية

[7] تمارين

[8] أعمال إنسانية



تحتاج الحيوانات إلى مساعدتنا لتبقى بصحة جيدة وفي أمان. تعيش بعض الحيوانات في البرية، بينما تعيش حيوانات أخرى في حدائق الحيوان أو في المنازل وكل حيوان بحاجة إلى رعاية خاصة ليعيش بشكل جيد.

تحتاج الحيوانات التي تعيش في حديقة الحيوان إلى اهتمام خاص. تحتاج الأفيال إلى مساحات أكبر من القردة لتتحرك فيها. تأكل الأسود كميات كبيرة من الطعام لتبقى أقوى من باقي الحيوانات. تحتاج الزرافات إلى أشجار طويلة لتصل إلى طعامها. يقوم الأطباء البيطريون بفحص صحة هذه الحيوانات.

تواجه الحيوانات البرية صعوبات مختلفة. فتسبب بناء المدن الجديدة في قلة الموطن التي تعيش به. تحتاج هذه الحيوانات إلى مياه نظيفة وأماكن آمنة للمعيشة. يعمل حراس الغابات الآن بجد أكبر من ذي قبل لحماية هذه الحيوانات ومواطنها.

تحتاج الحيوانات الأليفة إلى رعاية يومية من أصحابها. فتنحتاج الكلاب إلى التمارين. تأكل الأرانب الخضروات الطازجة، وهي بصحة أفضل من الحيوانات الأخرى. تحتاج الطيور إلى أقفاص أنظف مما تحتاج إليه الحيوانات الأخرى.

يمكن للجميع المساعدة في حماية الحيوانات بطرق بسيطة. فالأعمال الإنسانية البسيطة تجعل عالمنا أفضل. عندما نعتني بالحيوانات ننشئ مكانًا أكثر أمانًا لهم. وعلّمنا اللطف مع الحيوانات أن نكون أشخاصًا أفضل. معًا، يمكننا أن نتمتع بحياة أكثر سعادة وصحة.

Describe the
relationship
between ideas.

وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn

1. Why do lions eat a lot of food ?

- To stay stronger than other animals.

Practice

2. Why are the homes of wild animals getting smaller ?

.....

III

Language in use

1

Adjectives
الصفات

- Adjectives can be short or long.

يمكن أن تكون الصفات قصيرة أو طويلة.

- We use adjectives to describe people or things.

نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء.

Examples of short adjectives

tall طويل , clean نظيف , strong قوى , safe آمن , fast سريع

2 Comparative adjectives

صفات المقارنة

Usage : الاستخدام

- We use comparative adjectives to compare two people, things, animals, etc.

نستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين شخصين، شيئين، حيوانين، ... إلخ.

Formation : التكوين

Short adjective + er + than
الصفة القصيرة + er + than

ex A giraffe is taller than a zebra.



Notes

If an adjective ends in:

عندما تنتهي الصفة بـ :

• [-e] , → We add [-r]

نضيف [-r]

- safe → safer

- nice → nicer

ex Cats are nicer than foxes.



- **a vowel** + **a consonant** → **double the consonant.**
حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن → نضاعف الحرف الساكن.

- big → bigger

ex Bears are bigger than dogs.



- **a consonant + -y** → change **-y** to **-i** and add **-er**.
حرف ساكن + -y → -y إلى -i ونضيف الـ -er .

- healthy → healthier

- happy → happier

ex Rabbits are healthier than other animals.



Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. An elephant is [big] than a hippo.
2. Salma is [old] than Reem.
3. Magdy is [tall] than Injy.
4. Camels are [strong] than goats.
5. Milk is [healthy] than soda.
6. The river is cleaner [then] the pond.
7. Today is [hot] than yesterday.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Turtles are than rabbits.
a. slow b. slower c. slowest d. slowly
2. Their life is than before.
a. happy b. happiest c. happier d. the happy
3. The zoo is than the forest.
a. safer b. safest c. safely d. safe
4. Elephants are heavier lions.
a. then b. than c. that d. these

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Asser is taller his brother.
a. the b. that c. than d. then
2. Showing to animals can protect them.
a. crops b. kindness c. rocks d. cages
3. Rabbits are than turtles.
a. as fast b. fastest c. faster d. fast
4. Babies need special to stay safe.
a. attention b. work c. animals d. bus

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

protect – clean – happier – homes – officers

Wild animals face different challenges. Their [1] are getting smaller because of new cities. They need [2] water and safe places to live in. Forest [3] now work harder than before to [4] these animals and their homes. Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Pets need daily care from their owners. Dogs need exercise. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables, and they are healthier than other animals. Birds need cleaner cages than other animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about ".....".
a. Places b. Sharks c. Wild animals d. Pets
2. Turtles are than other animals.
a. faster b. slower c. healthier d. smaller

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do rabbits eat?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

• **4 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. London is [cold] than Paris.
2. The plane is [fast] than the train.
3. The red ship is [big] than the blue one.
4. She is shorter [the] her sister.

• **5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.**

1. Elephants are big than monkeys. [.....]
2. Mona is shorter then her brother. [.....]
3. Cars are fast than bikes. [.....]
4. Eating fruits is healthy than eating junk food. [.....]

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. do - Why - need - dogs - exercise ?
.....

2. animal - needs - Each - care - special.
.....

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

1. he keeps a rabbit at home
.....

2. how do vets help animals
.....

• **8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

Taking care of animals

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- attention - pets - safe

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Story Time : The Old Lion and the Fox

Pronunciation



I

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



footprints آثار الأقدام



fluffy tail ذيل كثيف



cave كهف

trick	خدعة/يخدع	entrance	مدخل	mistakes	أخطاء
fox	ثعلب	moral	مغزى أخلاقي	old lion	أسد كبير السن

Adjectives

quick	سريع	sick	مريض	wise	حكيم
weak	ضعيف	large	واسع - فسيح	friendly	ودود

Extra vocabulary

mountain	جبل	surface	سطح	hole	فتحة
safely	بأمان	marks	علامات	dear	عزيز - غالي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present	Past
pretend يتظاهر	pretended
act يتصرف	acted
die يموت	died
enter يدخل	entered
return يعود	returned
notice يلاحظ	noticed

Irregular

Present	Past
think يعتقد/يفكر	thought
stand يقف	stood
come يأتي	came
leave يغادر / يترك	left
understand يفهم	understood

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

red-brown fur	فراء لونه بني محمر	one-way footprints	آثار أقدام باتجاه واحد
go into	يدخل	lay down	استلقى / يتسطح
call out	يصيح / ينادي بصوت عالي	one by one	واحد بعد الآخر / واحد تلو الآخر
come out	يخرج من	run away	يهرب
in danger	في خطر	learn from	يتعلم من

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
fox ثعلب	a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur حيوان سريع وصغير الحجم ذات ذيل كثيف وفراء لونه بني محمر
cave كهف	a large hole in a mountain where animals can live حفرة كبيرة داخل جبل تعيش بها الحيوانات
footprints آثار الأقدام	marks left by feet هي علامات تركتها الأقدام
hunt يصطاد	to look for and catch animals for food يبحث عن الحيوانات ويصطادها من أجل الطعام
pretended تظاهر	acted like something was true when it wasn't يتصرف وكأن شيئاً ما صحيح وهو في الحقيقة ليس كذلك
lay down استلقى	put yourself on a surface, like the ground or a bed تمدد على سطح مثل الأرض أو سرير
The moral الدرس المستفاد	is the lesson a story teaches us. It helps us understand what is right and what is wrong هو درس نُعلمه لنا قصة ما. هذا يساعدنا على فهم ما هو صواب أو خطأ

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The Old Lion and the Fox	old lion - hunt	The old lion couldn't hunt anymore.
	pretend - cave	The old lion pretended to be sick in his cave.
	enter - return	Many animals entered the lion's cave and never returned.
	wise - footprints	A wise fox noticed the one-way footprints.
	cave - run away	The wise fox didn't go into the cave and ran away safely.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. **SB** are marks left by feet.
a. Fingerprints b. Photos c. Footprints d. Mistakes
2. The fox has a tail with soft fur.
a. hard b. fluffy c. dry d. fast
3. To means to act like something is true when it isn't.
a. pretend b. hunt c. save d. help
4. The fox understands the lion's trick.
a. healthy b. true c. wise d. clean
5. The dog down on the ground and slept.
a. saw b. lay c. replied d. heard
6. A is a large hole in a mountain.
a. surface b. floor c. cave d. cage
7. We should learn from the of others.
a. animals b. habitats c. mistakes d. care
8. To means to look for and catch animals for food.
a. protect b. care c. hunt d. create

II

Listening and Reading

The Old Lion and The Fox

الأسد العجوز و الثعلب

The Beginning

Once there was an old lion who couldn't hunt anymore. He was too weak to catch animals for food. So, he thought of a clever trick.

The lion went into his cave and pretended to be very sick. He lay down and called out, "Oh! I am so sick! Please, come visit me before I die!"



ذات مرة كان هناك أسد عجوز لم يعد يستطيع الصيد. كان ضعيفًا جدًا لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع صيد الحيوانات للحصول على طعامه. لذلك، فكر الأسد العجوز في حيلة ذكية. دخل الأسد إلى كهفه وتظاهر بأنه مريض للغاية. استلقى الأسد العجوز وصاح: "أوه! أنا مريض جدًا! من فضلكم، تعالوا لزيارتي قبل أن أموت!"

The Middle

Many animals heard about the sick lion. One by one, they went into his cave to visit him. But none of them came out! The lion was catching and eating each visitor.

A wise fox came near the cave. He saw many footprints going in, but none coming out. The fox stood at the cave entrance and said, "Hello, dear lion! How are you feeling?"

"Oh, dear fox!" said the lion. "I am very sick. Please come in and visit me!"

سمعت العديد من الحيوانات عن مرض الأسد. وبدأوا يأتون واحدًا تلو الآخر إلى كهفه لزيارته. لكن لم يخرج أي منهم! فقد كان الأسد يمسك بكل زائر ويأكله.

اقترب ثعلب حكيم من الكهف. فرأى آثار أقدام كثيرة تدخل إلى الكهف، ولكن لا توجد آثار تخرج منه. وقف الثعلب عند مدخل الكهف وقال: "مرحبًا، عزيزي الأسد! كيف حالك؟" قال الأسد: «أوه، عزيزي الثعلب! أنا مريض جدًا. من فضلك، ادخل لزيارتي!»

The End

The fox looked at the footprints again and replied, "Thank you, but I can see that many animals went into your cave, but none came out. I learn from the mistakes of others!"

And with that, the wise fox ran away safely, laughing at the lion's trick.

نظر الثعلب إلى آثار الأقدام مرة أخرى وأجاب: «شكرًا لك، لكنني أرى أن العديد من الحيوانات دخلت كهفك، ولم يخرج أي منها. أنا أتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين!»

بهذه الطريقة ركض الثعلب الحكيم مبتعدًا بأمان، وهو يضحك على خدعة الأسد.

The moral lesson of the story :

الدرس المستفاد من القصة:

It's important to learn from the mistakes of others. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين.

III

Pronunciation

Consonant blends

fr

dr

pl

★ When you blend, you join two or more sounds together to read a word, like "drum" and "fruit".

عند دمج الأصوات، يتم ضم صوتين أو أكثر معًا لقراءة الكلمة مثل كلمة "drum" و "fruit".



f + r = fr

The letters **fr** make the sound /fr/.



fruit فاكهة



frown عبوس

d + r = dr

The letters **dr** make the sound /dr/.



draw يرسم



drum طبلة

p + l = pl

The letters **pl** make the sound /pl/.



plant نبات



plane طائرة



Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 Read and complete with "fr", "dr" or "pl".

1. I can hit the — um easily.
2. She has a nice — ant in her room.
3. Adam likes eating — uit every day.

2 Listen and write the missing letters.

1. _ _ uit
2. _ _ aw
3. _ _ ant
4. _ _ own

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. An ant found a coin.

- a. glass b. silver c. gold d. plastic

2. The ant was

- a. brave b. honest c. wise d. kind

3. The ant returned the coin to its

- a. owner b. house c. family d. farm

4. The owner gave the ant a lot of

- a. clothes b. water c. food d. sweets

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The cat is than the fox.

- a. nicer b. nice c. as nice d. nicest

2. The lion tricked the animals and to be sick.

- a. remembered b. pretended c. hunted d. walked

3. My father is than me.

- a. as wise b. wisest c. wise d. wiser

4. A is a small, quick animal with red-brown fur.

- a. zebra b. bear c. giraffe d. fox

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pretended – cave – hunt – sick – footprints

There was an old lion. He was weak and couldn't [1] He tricked animals and [2] to be sick in his cave. He called the animals and asked them to visit him before he died. Many animals entered and never returned. A wise fox noticed the one-way [3] He didn't go into the [4]

• **4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. The fox is [wise] than the lion.
2. Jackets are [heavy] than shirts.
3. Bears' fur is [thick] than camels' fur.
4. The cave is larger [the] the hole.

• **5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.**

1. Cities are noisy than villages. [.....]
2. My room is clean than yours. [.....]
3. The drum is loud than the violin. [.....]
4. He is kinder to animals then his friends. [.....]

• **6 Read and match [A] with [B].**

- [A]**
1. Footprints are
 2. A cave is
 3. Pretended means

- [B]**
- ☐ a. a large hole in a mountain.
 - ☐ b. acted like something was true when it wasn't.
 - ☐ c. like the ground or a bed.
 - ☐ d. marks left by feet.

• **7 Reorder the words to make sentences.**

1. was - weak - and - The lion - old.

.....

2. marks - feet - Footprints - left - are - by.

.....

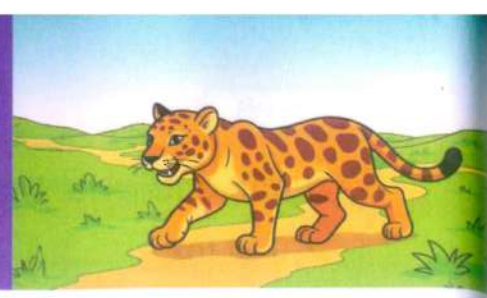
• **8 Punctuate the following.**

1. why did the lion trick the animals

.....

2. i learn from the mistakes of others

.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

endangered	مهدد بالانقراض	disappearing	الاختفاء	sea grass	عشب البحر
the Arabian Leopard	الفهد العربي	the Red Sea Dugong	أطوم البحر الأحمر	species	فصائل / أنواع
gentle	لطيف	fishing net	شبكة صيد	sea animals	حيوانات بحرية
				danger	خطر

• Extra vocabulary

forever	إلى الأبد	solution	حل	collage	فن اللصق
the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	research	بحث / يبحث	areas	مناطق
		reason	سبب	report	تقرير
facts	حقائق	pollution	تلوث	organization	منظمة

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
disappear	يختفي	build	يبني
remain	يبقى/يتبقى	eat	يأكل
stop	يوقف/يتوقف	teach	يُدرس / يُعلم
protect	يحمي		taught
act	يتصرف		
	disappeared		built
	remained		ate
	stopped		
	protected		
	acted		

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

around the world	حول العالم	in danger	في خطر
------------------	------------	-----------	--------

Did you know ?

A collage is an artwork made by cutting and pasting photos, paper, cloth, or drawings on a page.

فن اللصق هو عمل فني يُصنع بقص ولصق الصور أو الورق أو القماش أو الرسومات على الصفحة.

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Endangered animals	leopard - endangered	The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt.
	remain - wild	Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild.
	dugong - grass	The Red Sea Dugong eats sea grass.
	in danger - nets	Dugongs are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.
	create - help	We need to create safe areas to help endangered animals.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Some animals are in danger of forever.
a. growing b. disappearing c. swimming d. flying
- There are many of birds.
a. species b. areas c. habitats d. grades
- A little water in the bottle.
a. stops b. remains c. teaches d. protects
- Fishermen catch dugongs in their fishing
a. trains b. tricks c. holes d. nets
- These gentle animals eat sea grass.
a. sand b. land c. sea d. air
- The is a big wild cat.
a. bear b. zebra c. leopard d. dugong
- Forest officers work hard to animals.
a. create b. disappear c. trick d. protect
- The Red Sea is an endangered animal.
a. Coast b. Beach c. Dugong d. Grass
- We need to create safe to help endangered animals.
a. grass b. nets c. areas d. facts

II

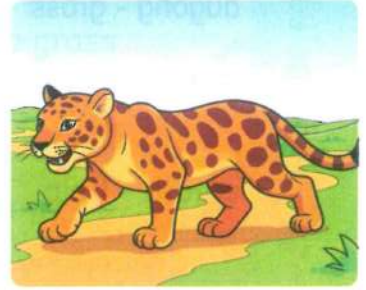
Listening and Reading

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

A research report : Endangered Animals

الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered **species**^[1]. Here are some **important**^[2] facts about endangered animals.



يوجد العديد من الحيوانات حول العالم مهددة بالاختفاء إلى الأبد. وتسمى هذه الحيوانات بالحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض. إليك بعض الحقائق الهامة عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.

The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these **beautiful**^[3] cats **remain**^[4] in the wild. One reason is that these animals **are** in danger because people build houses in their **habitats**^[5].

الفهد العربي هو واحد من أكثر الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض في مصر والشرق الأوسط. يتبقى أقل من 200 من هذه القطط الجميلة في البرية. أحد أسباب أن هذه الحيوانات في خطر لأن الناس يقومون ببناء منازل في مواطنهم.

The Red Sea Dugong is another endangered animal in Egypt. These **gentle**^[6] sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

بقر البحر في البحر الأحمر [الأطوم] هو حيوان آخر مهدد بالانقراض في مصر. هذه الحيوانات البحرية اللطيفة تأكل أعشاب البحر. وهي في خطر بسبب التلوث وشباك الصيد.

To help these animals, we need to :

لمساعدة هذه الحيوانات، نحتاج إلى :

- protect their homes
- stop **pollution**^[7]
- create safe areas
- teach people about them

• حماية أماكن معيشتها

• إيقاف التلوث

• إنشاء مناطق آمنة

• مساعدة الناس أن تعرف عن هذه الحيوانات



If we don't act now, these **amazing**^[8] animals could **disappear**^[9] forever.

إذا لم نتصرف الآن، فربما تختفي هذه الحيوانات المذهلة إلى الأبد.

III Writing Skill

Writing a research report about an endangered animal

- To write a research report about an animal,

- choose an animal

- اختر اسم الحيوان

- research facts about it

- ابحث عن حقائق عن هذا الحيوان

A good
report has

التقرير الجيد
يحتوي على

1 **Clear title** عنوان واضح

"Endangered Animals"

2 **Introduction** مقدمة

"Many animals are in danger of disappearing."

3 **Facts and information** حقائق ومعلومات

"The Red Sea Dugong eats sea grass."

4 **Examples** أمثلة

"The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal."

5 **Solutions** حلول

"To help these animals, stop pollution."

6 **Conclusion** خاتمة

"If we don't act now, these amazing animals could disappear forever."



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

- Write a research report about an endangered animal of **THREE** sentences [18] words.

Guiding elements :

Introduction • How does it look ?

Paragraph 1 • Why is it endangered ?

Paragraph 2 • How can we help it ?

Conclusion • What will happen if we don't save it ?

General Exercises

on Lessons 4 & 5

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People work hard to create safe places for animals.
a. deep b. endangered c. dead d. danger
2. The is a gentle sea animal.
a. bear b. dugong c. zebra d. tiger
3. After lunch, little food in the dishes.
a. remains b. disappears c. builds d. grows
4. Animals are in because of pollution.
a. nets b. wild c. danger d. homes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stop – animals – pollution – grass – protect

The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea [1]..... They are in danger because of [2]..... and fishing nets. To help these [3]....., we need to protect their homes and [4]..... pollution.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered **species**. The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about animals.
a. pets b. endangered c. desert d. sea
2. The underlined word "**species**" means ".....".
a. solutions b. cages c. habitats d. kinds

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does the Arabian Leopard live?

.....

4. Why is the Arabian Leopard in danger?

.....

• **4** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. should – Why – protect – we – animals ?

2. in danger – Many animals – of – are – disappearing.

• **5** Punctuate the following.

1. The red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal

2. people build houses in animals' habitats

• **6** Write a paragraph of **THREE** sentences about [18-24] words using the following guiding elements.

Endangered animals

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- disappear

- in danger

- pollution



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في فهم تفاصيل معينة في النص.

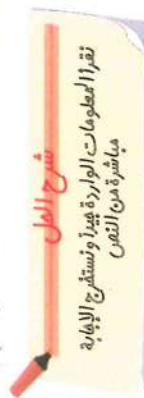
مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيداً حيث تكون الإجابة موجودة في النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered species. The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.



1. species are animals which are in danger of disappearing forever.

a. Sea b. Zoo c. Endangered d. Wild

2. Leopards are beautiful

a. dogs b. cats c. lizards d. frogs

Step 2

اقرأ و قم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Yesterday, I did some research about my favorite sea animal. It is the Red Sea Dugong. It is an endangered animal in Egypt. This gentle sea animal eats sea grass. It is in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

1. The Red Sea Dugong lives in

a. China b. England c. Egypt d. Japan

2. The Red Sea Dugong eats

a. small insects b. sea grass
c. large leaves d. fresh fruit

3. The Red Sea Dugong is in danger because of

a. clean water b. pollution
c. sea grass d. safe areas

2

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢١ جملة].

1 Animals at the forest park

Many people like visiting the forest park.^[1] The forest guide shows visitors the animals there.^[2] Monkeys, elephants, lions, and giraffes are amazing animals at the forest park.^[3] Monkeys can climb trees.^[4] Lions often hunt at night.^[5] Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees^[6].

2 Helping animals

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe.^[7] Each animal needs special care to live well.^[8] Dogs need exercise.^[9] Birds need clean cages.^[10] Elephants need big spaces to move around.^[11] Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways.^[12] When we care for animals, we create a safe environment for them^[13].

3 Endangered animals

Many animals are in danger of disappearing forever.^[14] The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt^[15]. They are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.^[16] To help these animals, we need to stop pollution and protect their homes^[17].

4 Wild animals

Wild animals face different challenges.^[18] Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities.^[19] Wild animals need clean water and safe places to live.^[20] Forest officers work hard to protect these animals and their homes.^[21]

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Review

Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

للمقارنة بين اثنين نضيف للصفة القصيرة [er] وبعدها than

[Short adjective] + er + than

Ex: tall ➡ taller than

big ➡ bigger than

safe ➡ safer than

healthy ➡ healthier than

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 Lions are [strong] than monkeys.	stronger	عند المقارنة بين شيئين يضاف للصفة القصيرة [er]
2 The bear is [big] than fox.	bigger	عندما تنتهي الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير في الصفة
3 Elephants are [heavy] than giraffes.	heavier	عندما تنتهي الصفة بحرف [ي] قبله حرف ساكن نحول [يا] إلى [إي] ونضيف [-er]
4 Cats are safer [then] lions.	than	نضع [than] بعد الصفة للمقارنة

Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

Write the reason.

1 A monkey is [small] than an elephant.	smaller	.....
2 Vegetables are [healthy] than junk food.	healthier	.....
3 His house is [big] than mine.	bigger	.....
4 The fox is [smart] than other animals.	smarter	.....

Write the correction.

◀ اكتب التصحيح.

1 A mouse is [small] than a rabbit.	.....	مقارنة صفة قصيرة يضاف لها [-er]
2 The green shirt is [nice] than the red shirt.	.....	نضيف [r] لأن الصفة تنتهي بـ [e] وبعدها [than]
3 Noha is [young] than Fatma.	.....	صفة قصيرة يضاف لها [-er]
4 Cats are nicer [then] dogs.	.....	صيغة مقارنة لوجود صفة قصيرة تنتهي بـ [-er]

4

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

الجملة الخبرية

1	a long - The monkey - tail - has.
2	special - animals - Zoo - attention - need.
3	pretended - very - The lion - to be - sick.
4	has - fur - The bear - thick.
5	officers - animals - Forest - protect.
6	eat - vegetables - Rabbits - fresh.
7	feet - marks - by - Footprints - left - are.
8	animals - different - Wild - face - challenges.
9	animal - is - endangered - The leopard - an.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
He	works	as a tour guide.
	has	
Zoo animals		
The bear		

الجملة الأمرية

1	me - Come - visit.
2	kind - animals - Be - to.
3	houses - habitats - Don't - in - build - animal's.
4	people - animals - endangered - Teach - about.

1	2	3
Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
Don't	climb	trees.

الجملة الاستفهامية

1	do - see - What - visitors - animals?
2	giraffes - What - eat - do?
3	do - dogs - Why - exercise - need?
4	feeling - How - you - are?
5	do - animals - Why - exercise - need ?

1	2	3	4	5
كلمة استفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
When	do	lions	often hunt ?	
	do			



Review on Unit 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثالثة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

zebra	حمار وحشى
bear	دب
forest guide	مرشد فى الغابة
endangered	مهدد بالإنقراض
striped	مخطط
spotted	منقط
pet	حيوان اليف
forest officer	حارس الغابة
challenges	تحديات/ صعوبات
habitats	بيئات/ مواطن
cage	قفص
footprints	آثار أقدام
fluffy	كثيف
cave	كهف

Pronunciation

Diagraphs



fruit فاكهة

/fr/



frown عبوس



draw يرسم

/dr/



drum طبلة



plant نبات

/pl/



plane طائرة

Language in use

Comparative Adjectives صفات المقارنة

..... + short adj. صفة قصيرة + er + than

◀ تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة بإضافة [-er] إليها، وتأتى بعدها [than] :

fast → faster

clean → cleaner

ex. - A giraffe is taller than a zebra.

• لاحظ أن :

١. يُضاف [-r] فقط فى نهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [e] :

safe → safer

٢. يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف [-er] لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

big → bigger

thin → thinner

hot → hotter

٣. الصفات المنتهية بحرف [y] مسبوقاً بحرف ساكن تتحول [y] إلى [i] ونضيف [-er] :

happy → happier

healthy → healthier

General Exercises | on Unit 3

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. Animals need our [money - help] to stay healthy and safe.
2. Some animals live in the [nests - wild].
3. Each animal needs special [air - care] to live well.
4. [Wild - Zoo] animals need special attention, too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Teachers give some to students to study well.
a. habits b. spaces c. advice d. visits
2. I take my cat to the to check its health.
a. engineer b. vet c. teacher d. farmer
3. Elephants are than lions.
a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the big
4. No one in the class is than Hatem.
a. smarter b. smart c. as smart d. smartest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

kindness - animals - care - happier - go

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small acts of [1] make our world better. When we [2] for animals, we create a safe place for them. Being kind to [3] teaches us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives [4] and healthier.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Zoo animals, like elephants and lions, need space, food, and vet checks. Wild animals face challenges, like their homes getting smaller. They also need clean water and safe places to live in. Pets, like dogs and rabbits, need daily care, exercise, and fresh food. Birds need clean cages, and all pets need vet visits. We can help by being kind and caring for animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Animals need our help to stay and safe.
a. sad b. hungry c. healthy d. angry
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ".....".
a. zoo animals b. wild animals c. pets d. homes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do pets need?

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. The factory is [big] than the museum.

2. Adam is [strong] than his little brother.

3. **SB** His house is bigger [the] mine.

4. Flowers are [pretty] than grass.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. colder - is - Winter - summer - than.

2. is - loud - The music - very.

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

A forest animal

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- see

- tail

- hunt

The Story

8 [A] Read and complete the text with words from the box.

surprise - medal - competition - announce - drawings

Miss Mason announced that it was time for the annual drawing competition. When it was time to [1] the winner, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful [2] of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda won the [3], but she wasn't there to receive her [4]

[B] Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Wanda's family move to the big city ?

2. **SB** How did Peggy and Maddie feel after seeing Wanda's drawings ?

Review 1

on Units 1, 2 & 3

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Unit 1

senses	الحواس	smoke	دخان	restaurant	مطعم
hearing	حاسة السمع	mind	عقل	get dressed	يرتدي ملابسه
sight	حاسة الإبصار	sharp	يقظ - منتبه	setting	زمان ومكان القصة
smell	حاسة الشم	break time	وقت الاستراحة	greedy	طماع - جشع
fire	حريق	owner	مالك	jingling sound	صوت رنين خفيف

Unit 2

community	مجتمع	traffic	حركة مرور	outfit	رداء خاص [ملابس]
neighbors	جيران	bin	سلة مهملات	neighborhood	حي
trash	قمامة	culture	ثقافة	wooden	خشبي
collect	يجمع	the Delta	دلتا النيل	train station	محطة قطار
feed	يطعم	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلي	air pollution	تلوث الهواء
volunteer	يتطوع	region	منطقة / إقليم	safely	بأمان

Unit 3

giraffe	زرافة	cave	كهف	footprints	آثار أقدام
zebra	حمار وحشي	vet	طبيب بيطري	fluffy	كثيف
leaves	أوراق شجر	hunt	يصطاد	species	فصائل / انواع
striped	مخطط	pretend	يتظاهر	sea grass	عشب بحري
spotted	منقط	places	اماكن	fishing nets	شباك الصيد
thick	سميك / كثيف	trunk	خرطوم [الفيل]	protect	يحمي
forest officer	حارس الغابة	sick	مريض	endangered	مهدد بالانقراض

Unit 1

The Present Simple Tense:

زمن المضارع البسيط :

Affirmative statement:

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

I/They/We/You / اسم جمع + التصريف الأول للفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + [s/es/ies] + التصريف الأول للفعل

ex. - My brother and I **watch** TV in the evening.- The nurse **helps** sick people.

Unit 2

[1] The Present Simple Tense in the negative and interrogative:

زمن المضارع البسيط في صيغة النفي وصيغة الاستفهام :

Negative statement: Subject + don't/doesn't + inf.

الجملة الخبرية المنفية

Ex. - Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.- He **doesn't need** to use a car every day.

Interrogative: Do/Does + فاعل + inf. ?

صيغة الاستفهام

Ex. - **Does** Mariam listen to music on the bus?- **No**, she **doesn't**.- **Do** you take the bus to the Pyramids?- **Yes**, I **do**.

[2] The prefixes "dis- / il- /ir-" means "not"

"البادئات" "ir- / il- /dis-" تعني (ليس)

like → **dislike**legal → **illegal**regular → **irregular**Ex. - He **dislikes** ice cream.- It is **illegal** to drive here.

Unit 3

Comparative Adjectives صفات المقارنة

Adjective الصفة	Comparative مقارنة	Example مثال
short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	في حالة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين نضيف للصفة [-er] ثم [than]	- A giraffe is taller than a zebra.

ملاحظات هامة :

١. يضاف [-r] للصفة ذات مقطع واحد المنتهية بـ [-e] عند المقارنة بين اثنين مثل: Ex. - nice → **nicer**

٢. يضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة [-er] في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبلها حرف متحرك مثل:

Ex. - big → **bigger**

٣. تحول الـ [-y] إلى [-i] ونضيف [-er] في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ [-y] قبلها حرف ساكن مثل:

Ex. - healthy → **healthier**

UNIT

4

Egypt My Homeland

مصر موطني

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Discuss in groups famous places in Egypt
مناقشة أماكن مشهورة في مصر في مجموعات
- Use prepositions of places to talk about different locations
استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان للتحدث عن أماكن مختلفة

Reading

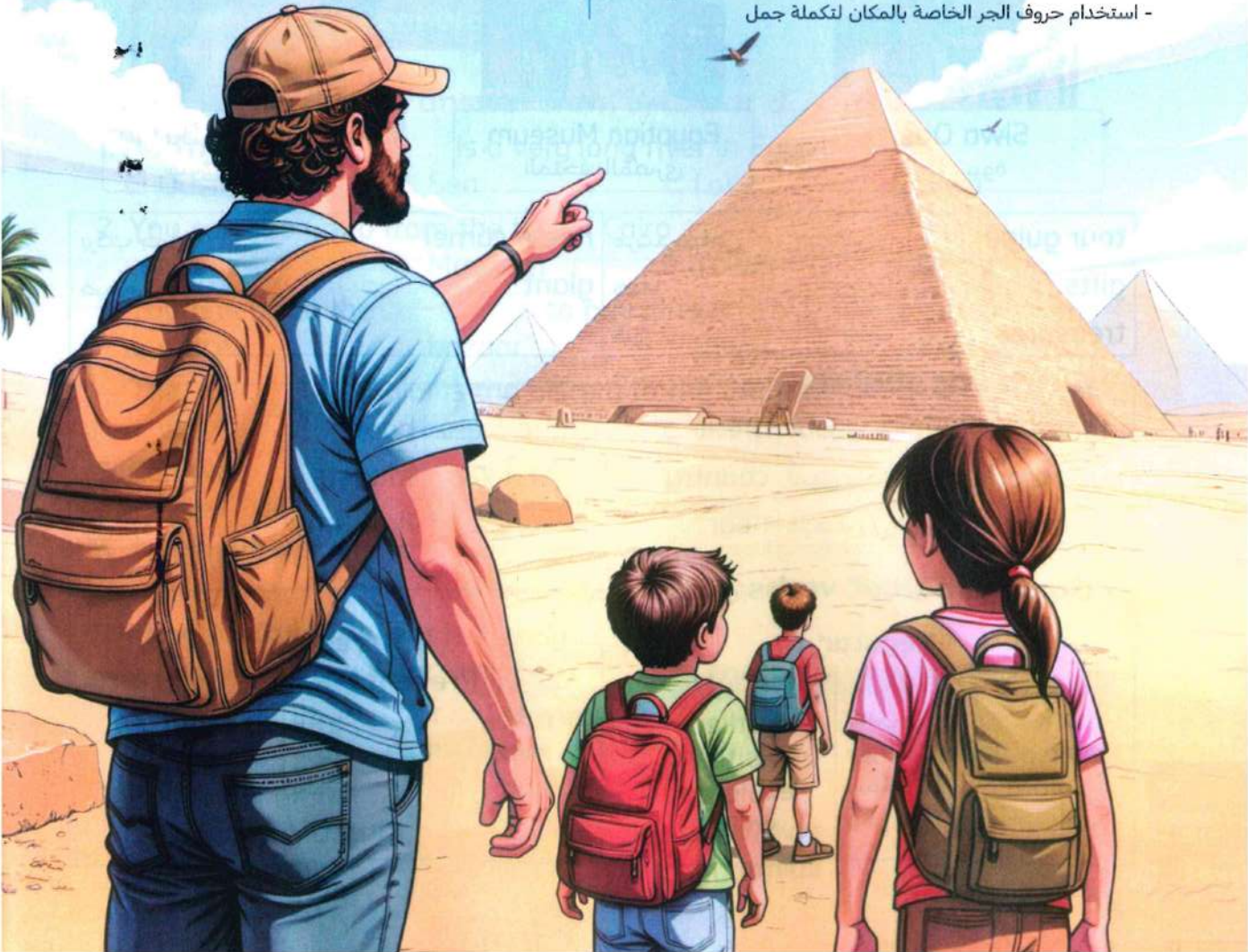
- Recognize descriptions of famous places
التعرف على وصف أماكن مشهورة
- Extract key information from travel leaflets
استخلاص معلومات رئيسية من كتيبات سياحية
- Read numbers up to a billion
قراءة الأرقام حتى المليار

Listening

- Identify key information about a tourist attraction in a conversation
التعرف على معلومات أساسية عن أماكن الجذب السياحي في محادثة
- Discriminate between the pronunciation of the /p/ and /b/ sounds
التمييز بين نطق الاصوات /p/ و /b/

Writing

- Design a basic travel leaflet
تصميم كتيب سياحي بسيط
- Complete sentences using prepositions of place
تكملة الجمل باستخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان
- Write a blog post about a famous place in Egypt
كتابه منشور في مدونة عن مكان مشهور في مصر
- Use prepositions of place to complete sentences
استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتكملة جمل





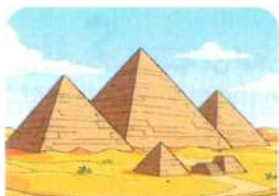
I

Vocabulary

Places in Egypt

اماكن في مصر

• Key vocabulary

Pyramids
الاهراماتNile River
نهر النيلCairo Tower
برج القاهرةSiwa Oasis
واحة سيوةEgyptian Museum
المتحف المصريKhan Al-Khalili Bazaar
سوق خان الخليلي

tour guide	مرشد سياحي	ride a camel	يركب جمل
gifts	هدايا	giant	ضخم / عملاق
treasures	كنوز		

• Extra vocabulary

stones	الاحجار	great	عظيم	boat	قارب
busy market	سوق مزدحم	country	دولة / بلد	tourists	سياح
amazing	مدهش / رائع	near	قريب	first time	اول مرة

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked	ride	يركب	rode
visit	يزور	visited	meet	يقابل	met
explore	يستكشف	explored	buy	يشترى	bought
sail	يسبح	sailed			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take pictures
That sounds fun
work as +
full of

يلتقط صور
يبدو هذا أمر ممتع!
يعمل كـ
مملوء بـ

Welcome to Egypt!
get water from
from the top
Nice to meet you!

مرحباً بك في مصر!
يحصل على المياه من
من الأعلى
سعدت بلقائك!

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Amazing places in Egypt	talk-places	Ali and John are talking about Egypt's amazing places.
	work-guide	Ali works as a tour guide in Egypt.
	pictures-Pyramids	Tourists take many pictures at the Pyramids.
	ride camels	Many people ride camels near the Pyramids.
	museum-treasures	The Egyptian Museum has many treasures to see.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- SB** The Nile is a very long river in Egypt.
a. Oasis b. Sea c. Lake d. River
- You can see Cairo from the top of Cairo
a. Nile b. Museum c. Tower d. Oasis
- Tourists go to the to buy gifts.
a. office b. bazaar c. tower d. theater
- The explains the history to the tourists.
a. vet b. forest officer c. tour guide d. dentist
- Can we a camel near the Pyramids ?
a. dive b. skate c. drive d. ride
- The Egyptian has many treasures to see.
a. Nile b. Tower c. Museum d. Cinema
- Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar is a busy
a. office b. market c. school d. forest
- I had a for my birthday.
a. guide b. museum c. gift d. tourist
- Boats sail on the
a. Egyptian Museum b. Nile River
c. Khan Al-Khalili d. Pyramids

II

Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Exploring Egypt with Ali !

Ali and John are at the Pyramids talking about Egypt's amazing places.

على و جون في الأهرامات يتحدثون عن الأماكن الرائعة في مصر.

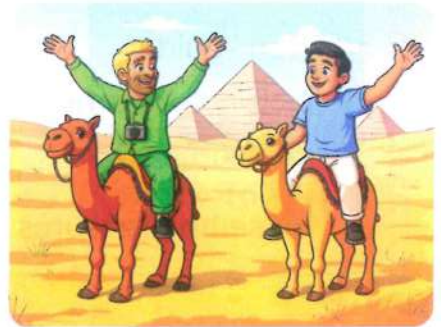
Ali : Hi, I'm Ali ! I work as a tour guide in Egypt. Welcome to Egypt!

مرحباً، أنا على! أنا أعمل كمرشد سياحي في مصر. مرحباً بك في مصر!

John : Nice to meet you, Ali ! I'm John. This is my first time in Egypt.

سعدت بلقائك يا على! أنا جون. هذه الزيارة الأولى لي في مصر.

Ali : You will like it here! The Pyramids are very nice. Tourists take many pictures here.



ستستمتع بزيارتك لمصر! فالأهرامات رائعة للغاية. يلتقط السياح صوراً كثيرة هنا.

John : Great! Can I ride a camel, too?

رائع! هل يمكنني أيضاً ركوب جمل؟

Ali : Yes! Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun!

نعم! فالكثير من الناس يركبون الجمل بالقرب من الأهرامات. هذا أمر ممتع!

John : What can we visit after the Pyramids?

ماذا يمكننا أن نزر بعد الأهرامات؟

Ali : Next, we can visit the Egyptian Museum. It has many treasures to see, and history too!

بعد زيارة الأهرامات، يمكننا زيارة المتحف المصري. فيوجد به الكثير من الكنوز التي يمكننا رؤيتها والتاريخ أيضاً!

John : I love history! Are there more places to visit?

أحب التاريخ! هل توجد أماكن أكثر نستطيع زيارتها؟

Ali : Yes! We can go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy some gifts.

بالطبع! فيمكننا زيارة خان الخليلي لشراء بعض الهدايا.

John : That sounds fun!

يبدو هذا أمر ممتع!

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn

1. Ali is a in Egypt.

a. tourist

b. tour guide

c. vet

d. driver

Practice

2. The Egyptian Museum has many

a. gifts

b. treasures

c. camels

d. pets

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt has a lot of interesting to visit.
a. islands b. places c. forests d. towers
2. The Egyptian is an amazing place.
a. Island b. Tower c. Museum d. Oasis
3. The Egyptian Museum is in
a. Luxor b. Giza c. Siwa d. Cairo
4. The Egyptian Museum has many to see.
a. pictures b. movies c. treasures d. animals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. **SB** The Cairo is very tall. We can see Cairo from the top.
a. Museum b. Nile c. Tower d. Bazaar
2. People used giant to build the Pyramids.
a. towers b. stones c. oases d. trees
3. Tourists can ride at the Pyramids.
a. gifts b. history c. boats d. camels
4. The Egyptian Museum is full of
a. drinks b. camels c. gifts d. history

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box.

giant - camels - Pyramids - guide

1. Last week, we visited the at Giza.
2. The tour who helped us know a lot about the Pyramids.
3. The Pyramids are very big. People used stones to build them.
4. We took many photos and rode

• **4 Read the text and write T [True] or F [False].**

There are a lot of amazing places in Egypt. So many tourists like visiting Egypt every year. Tourists enjoy visiting the Pyramids. They take many pictures there. They ride camels near the Pyramids. They also like visiting the Egyptian Museum. The Egyptian Museum has many treasures to see.

1. There aren't any interesting places in Egypt. []
2. Tourists take pictures in the Pyramids. []
3. Tourists ride bikes near the Pyramids. []
4. The Egyptian Museum has many treasures. []

• **5 Reorder to make sentences.**

1. Al-Khalili – is – market – Khan – a busy – Bazaar.

.....

2. on – River – Boats – the Nile – sail.

.....

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

1. This is my first time in Egypt

.....

2. which places do you like to visit

.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

Amazing places in Egypt

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- visit

- pictures

- gifts

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



library
مكتبة



school
مدرسة



shopping mall
مركز تجاري



post office
مكتب البريد



hospital
مستشفى



museum
متحف

packages	طرود بريدية	stores	متاجر	connected	علي تواصل
city	مدينة [كبيرة]	students	طلاب		

• Extra vocabulary

places	اماكن	doctors	اطباء	teacher	معلم / معلمة
restaurant	مطعم	living room	حجرة المعيشة	fun	ممتع
lamp	مصباح كهربائي	favorite	مفضل	different	مختلف
notebook	دفتر / كراسة	nurse	ممرضة		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
borrow يستعير	borrowed	read يقرأ	read
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	send يرسل	sent
learn يتعلم	learned	sell يبيع	sold
		teach يعلم	taught

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel better

يتحسن

stay connected

يبقى على اتصال

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My city	city – places	Our city has many important places.
	school – learn	Students go to school to learn and meet friends.
	library – read	The library has many books to read or borrow.
	doctors – better	Doctors help sick people feel better.
	post office – stay	The post office helps people stay connected.
	buy – shopping mall	People buy things and eat in the shopping mall.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What is the most important in your city ? – The school.

- a. package b. book c. place d. tool

2. We can borrow a book from the

- a. post office b. hospital c. museum d. library

3. If someone is sick, they go to

- a. school b. museum c. hospital d. mall

4. **SB** Students go to school to

- a. climb b. drink c. sell d. learn

5. At the, we send letters to our family.

- a. post office b. library
c. shopping mall d. hospital

6. The shopping mall is a place with many

- a. stories b. stores c. animals d. trees

7. They ate lunch at the new

- a. restaurant b. museum c. store d. market

8. have treasures from the past.

- a. Supermarkets b. Hospitals c. Museums d. Schools

Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ١١ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

The places we go in our city

Our city has many important places that help people every day. One important place is the school. Students go there to learn and meet friends. Teachers help them, and the library has many books to read or borrow.

يوجد بمدينتنا العديد من الاماكن الهامة التي تساعد الناس كل يوم. المدرسة هي احدى هذه الاماكن الهامة. يذهب الطلاب إلى المدرسة ليتعلموا ويلتقون باصدقائهم . يساعد المعلمون الطلاب وتحتوى المكتبة المدرسية على العديد من الكتب للقراءة والاستعارة.



Another important place is the hospital. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better. Next to the hospital is the post office, where people send letters and packages to stay connected.

المستشفى هي مكان اخر مهم في مدينتنا . يساعد الاطباء والممرضات المرضى على الشعور بالتحسن. بجانب المستشفى يوجد مكتب بريد حيث يقوم الناس بار سال الخطابات والطرود البريدية الخاصة بهم . لكي يبقوا على تواصل.

The shopping mall has many stores and restaurants. People buy things and eat there. Behind it is a museum with treasures that teach us about our history. These places make our city a great place to live.

المركز التجاري في مدينتنا به العديد من المتاجرو المطاعم. يقوم الناس بشراء الأشياء وتناول الطعام. خلف المركز التجاري، يوجد متحف يحتوي على كنوز تعلمنا عن تاريخنا. كل هذه الأماكن تجعل مدينتنا مكان رائع للمعيشة فيه.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn

1. People send letters and at the post office.

a. tools

b. packages

c. cars

d. food

Practice

2. Students can read and borrow books from the

a. hospital

b. library

c. post office

d. shopping mall

★ Read and identify. اقرأ و تعرف.



1 The library :

is a place where we can read or borrow books.

المكتبة هي المكان الذي نستطيع فيه قراءة أو استعارة الكتب منها.



2 The post office :

is a place where we send letters and packages.

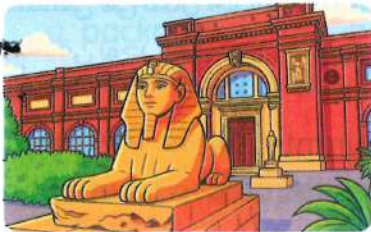
مكتب البريد هو المكان الذي نرسل عبره الخطابات والطرود البريدية.



3 The school :

is a place where students learn and meet friends.

المدرسة هي المكان الذي يتعلم فيه الطلاب ويقابلون أصدقائهم.



4 The museum:

is a place where we can see treasures that teach us about our history.

المتحف هو المكان الذي نستطيع فيه رؤية الكنوز التي تعلمنا عن تاريخنا.



5 The shopping mall :

is a place where people buy things and eat there.

مركز التسوق هو المكان الذي يشتري منه الناس الأشياء ويأكلون هناك.



6 The hospital :

is a place where doctors and nurses help sick people feel better.

المستشفى هي المكان الذي يساعد فيه الأطباء والممرضات الأشخاص المرضى في التحسن.

III

Language in use

Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

► We use prepositions of place to show where things are.

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتوضيح أماكن الأشياء.

in

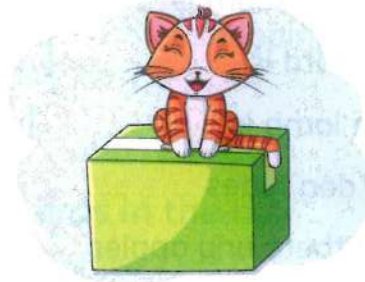
في



- The cat is **in** the box.

on

على



- The cat is **on** the box.

in front of

أمام



- The cat is **in front of** the box.

behind

خلف



- The cat is **behind** the box.

next to

بجانب



- The cat is **next to** the box.

between

بين



- The cat is **between** the two boxes.



Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Read and write the correct preposition.

1. The toys are [behind] front of the box.
2. I couldn't see the dog because it was [between] the chair.
3. There's a tree [behind] of my house.
4. The museum is [between] to the library.
5. The bird is [in] the branch of the tree.
6. The lamp is [next] the laptop and the fan.
7. My dog hides [between] the bed.
8. Are there any apples [on] the fridge ?
9. Plants grow next [of] the river.
10. Your hat is [between] your head, grandpa.
11. The glasses are [behind] the book and the TV.
12. There is a book [in] the shelf.
13. There are many buses [between] to the park.
14. The key was [next] the door, so I didn't see it.

2 Look and complete the text with the correct prepositions of place.

This is my living room! My family picture is on the wall. My cat is the blue chair. My toy car is the table. The lamp is the TV. The table is the TV. The plant is a book and a notebook.



General Exercises

on Lesson 2

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The post office is next the library.
a. in b. of c. to d. at
2. Doctors and nurses work in the
a. museum b. library c. post office d. hospital
3. People buy things at the
a. museum b. library c. hospital d. shopping mall
4. He is sitting front of the house.
a. to b. in c. at d. on

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shopping mall - borrow - sick - post office - school

There are different places in my town. Students go to [1] every morning to learn. They can [2] books from the library. When people feel [3], they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the [4] It has many stores and restaurants.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our city has many important places. These places help people every day. One important place is the school. Students go to school to learn. They also meet friends there. Teachers help students learn new things. There is a library in the school. The library has many books. Students can read books there. You can borrow books from the library.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The school is a/an place.
a. tall b. busy c. important d. dangerous
2. There is a in the school.
a. museum b. library c. park d. theater

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence .
.....

4. Where can you borrow books?
.....

• **4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. He took a photo in [next] of the Pyramids.
2. Put the books [in] the shelf.
3. She puts the dishes [behind] the table at lunchtime.
4. The post office is [under] the park and the bank.

• **5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.**

1. The kids are playing between the park. [.....]
2. There are many trees in front to my house. [.....]
3. The hospital is on the bank and the museum. [.....]
4. There is a chair front to the table. [.....]

• **6 Read, order and write.**

1. teaches – The museum – us – our history – about.

.....

2. can – go – Where – we – to borrow – a book ?

.....

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

1. the shopping mall has many stores

.....

2. why is the school important

.....

• **8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

Places you go in your city

مجاوب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What's your favorite place?
- Why is it important?
- What do you do in each place?

.....

- The world of big numbers
- Pronunciation



I

Math

A Billion

Learn

A billion is a thousand million.

المليار هو ألف مليون

1,000,000,000

1 billion

★ Look and identify. انظروا وتعرفوا.

Numbers up to a billion

The place-value chart

مخطط القيمة المكانية

billions	millions			thousands			units		
billions مليارات	hundred millions مئات الملايين	ten millions عشرات الملايين	millions ملايين	hundred thousands مئات الآلاف	ten thousands عشرات الآلاف	thousands آلاف	hundreds مئات	tens عشرات	ones أحاد
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0



★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

If we need to Say

8,199,590,341

8 eight billion

199 one hundred ninety-nine million

590 five hundred ninety thousand

341 three hundred and forty-one

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

China has one of the world's largest populations. In 1980, the population of China reached about 1,000,000,000 which means 1 billion people.

تعتبر الصين من أكثر دول العالم تعدادًا للسكان. ففي عام ١٩٨٠ وصل عدد سكانها إلى حوالي ١,٠٠٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠ أي ما يعادل مليار نسمة.



Pop Quiz on Math

Read and complete.

billions - hundred millions - hundred thousands - tens - thousands

		ten million							
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
		million	ten thousand	hundred	one				

2 Read and write T [True] or F [False].

- 4,000 is four thousand. []
- 73,000,000 is seventy-three thousand. []
- 7,000,000,000 is seven hundred billion. []

II

Pronunciation

p → /p/

► The letter **p** is voiceless.

- حرف **p** هو حرف ينطق بدون اهتزاز للاحبال الصوتية.

To say it

1. press your lips together.

2. blow out air.

- لنطق حرف **p** ، ضم شفطيك معًا ، ثم اخرج الهواء بقوة.

P → /p/



pond بركة ماء



pan طاسة / مقلاة



peak قمة جبل



pear كمثرى

pin دبوس

pat ضربة خفيفة

b → /b/

► The letter **b** is voiced.

- حرف **b** يصاحبه اهتزاز للاحبال الصوتية عند النطق.

To say it

1. press your lips together.

2. use your voice.

- لنطق حرف **b** ، ضم شفطيك معًا ، ثم اخرج صوتًا عند النطق.

b → /b/



bat خفاش



bear دب



bin سلة



beak منقار

ban يمنع

bond رابطة / علاقة



Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct word.

1.



bat / pat

2.



pear / bear

3.



peak / beak

4.



bond / pond

2 Listen and write the missing letters.

1.



- ond

2.



- ear

3.



- in

4.



- eak

3 Read and complete.

[pond - bin - pan - bat]

- The ducks swim in the
- Mom cooks eggs in the
- The flies at night.
- We throw our trash in the

4 Read and sort.

bear - pond - bin - peak - pan - bat

/ p /	/ b /
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	

5 Match the words to the pictures.

1. pan

•

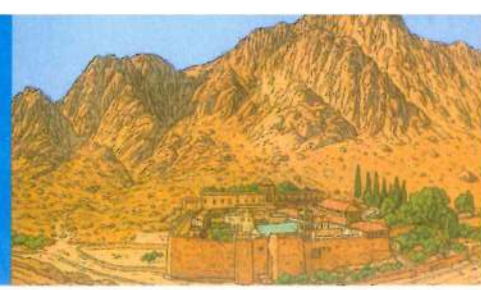
2. bear

•

3. pond

•





I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

St. Catherine Mountain	rocks	صخور	salt lake	البحيرة المالحة
جبل سانت كاترين	popular	مشهور	nature	الطبيعة
monastery	adventure	مغامرة	dates	تمر
دير	olive oil	زيت زيتون	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
warm clothes	ملابس ثقيلة			

• Extra vocabulary

South Sinai	جنوب سيناء	cold	بارد	local food	طعام محلي
historical	تاريخي	price	ثمن	jacket	سترة / جاكيت
leaflet	كُتيب	desert	صحراء	colorful	ملون
weather	طقس	summer clothes	ملابس صيفية	natural	طبيعي

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited	wear	يرتدي	wore
climb	يتسلق	climbed	swim	يسبح	swam
book	يحجز	booked			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the top | في قمة | along the way | على طول الطريق

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A visit to St. Catherine Mountain	tourists - mountain	Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai.
	colorful - plants	Along the way, tourists see colorful rocks and small plants.
	monastery - history	Tourists visit the old monastery and learn about its history.
	popular - adventure	St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Many tourists climb St. Catherine

- a. River b. Mountain c. Forest d. Desert

2. People wear clothes in cold areas.

- a. honest b. fast c. short d. warm

3. Falafel is a very food in Egypt.

- a. modern b. colorful c. popular d. irregular

4. Tourists like to mountains.

- a. wear b. swim c. book d. climb

5. There are many fish in the sea.

- a. colorful b. rainy c. hot d. high

6. Climbing a mountain is my first

- a. adventure b. design c. package d. letter

7. The is hot in the desert.

- a. photo b. snow c. history d. weather

8. The mountain is made of

- a. rocks b. water c. history d. wind

9. is all the animals, plants and rocks in the world.

- a. Time b. Nature c. Weather d. History

II

Listening and Reading

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

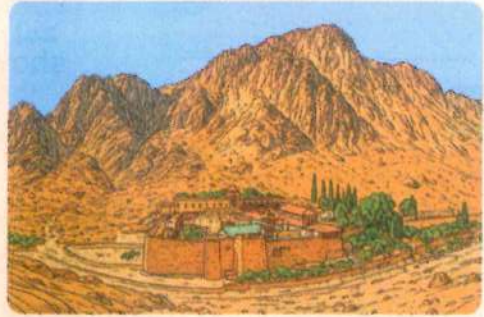
Tarek's blog post about St. Catherine Mountain

A visit to St. Catherine Mountain

By Tarek

March 15, 2024

Many **tourists**^[1] visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They **wake up**^[2] early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small **plants**^[3], and some **take pictures**^[4]. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history.



[1] سياح

[2] يستيقظ

[3] نباتات

[4] يلتقط صور

St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

زيارة الى جبل سانت كاترين

بقلم طارق

١٥ مارس ٢٠٢٤

يزور العديد من السياح جبل سانت كاترين في جنوب سيناء، مصر. يستيقظ السياح مبكراً للتسلق ويرتدوا ملابس دافئة لأن الجو يكون بارداً.

على امتداد الطريق، يرى السياح صخوراً ملونة ونباتات صغيرة وبعضهم يلتقطون صوراً.

وعند القمة، يزورون الدير القديم ويتعلمون عن تاريخه. سانت كاترين مكان مشهور للطبيعة والمغامرة والاستمتاع مع الأصدقاء والعائلة. يمكن للناس التعلم عن التاريخ والاستمتاع بالعالم الطبيعي.

Determine the meaning of words and phrases.

وضح معاني الكلمات والعبارات.

Learn

1. The opposite of the underlined word "old" is ".....".

a. bad

b. new

c. heavy

d. colorful

Practice

2. The underlined word "popular" means ".....".

a. colorful

b. hard

c. famous

d. easy

III

Writing Skill

A blog has some features

المدونة لها بعض السمات

1

Clear title

عنوان واضح

tells readers what the blog post is about.

لاخبار القراء بما يدور حوله منشور المدونة.

"A visit to St. Catherine Mountain"

2

Writer's name

اسم الكاتب

shows who wrote the blog post.

يوضح من قام بكتابة منشور المدونة.

"By Tarek"

3

Date

التاريخ

shows when the blog post was written.

يوضح الوقت الذي كتب فيه منشور المدونة.

"March 15, 2024"

4

Descriptive words

كلمات وصفية

help readers imagine and picture what you're writing about, like

تساعد القارئ على تخيل وتصوير ما نكتب عنه، مثل

"interesting, popular"

5

Interesting details

تفاصيل شيقة

6

Pictures / Drawings

صور ورسومات

How to write a blog post about a place in Egypt.

1

Where is the place ?

اين المكان ؟

4

What do visitors wear ?

ماذا يرتدى الزوار ؟

2

Why is it popular ?

لماذا هو مشهور ؟

5

What do visitors do there ?

ماذا يفعل الزوار هناك ؟

3

What can people see there ?

ماذا يمكن للناس رؤيته هناك ؟

6

What do visitors like about it?

ماذا يحب الزوار في هذا المكان ؟



A place in Egypt

Tip !

- Good descriptive writing uses sense words.

تستخدم الكتابة الوصفية الجيدة كلمات التعبير عن الحواس.

- If you write about how the place looks, sounds, smells, and feels like, the reader will be able to imagine it.

إذا كتبت عن شكل المكان وأصواته، ورائحته، وملمسه، فسيكون القارئ قادر على تخيله.

- If you talk about the beach, you can say :

إذا تحدثت عن الشاطئ، يمكنك أن تقول :

Ex: - "The air tastes salty".

A leaflet

Making a leaflet about the Siwa Oasis

عمل كتيب عن واحة سيوة

The leaflet has:
يحتوي الكتيب على:

main heading

عنوان رئيسي

sub-heading

عنوان فرعي

image

صورة

detailed
description

وصف تفصيلي

call to action

دعوة لاتخاذ إجراء

1. A main heading is the big title at the top.

العنوان الرئيسي هو العنوان الكبير في الأعلى.

2. A sub-heading is the smaller title.

- العنوان الفرعي هو العنوان الأصغر.

3. An image is a photo or drawing.

- الصورة هي صورة فوتوغرافية أو رسومية.

4. A detailed description gives reasons to visit and advice on what to expect.

- الوصف التفصيلي يقدم أسبابًا للزيارة ونصائح حول ما يمكن توقعه.

5. A call to action is an invitation to.

- الدعوة لاتخاذ القرار هي دعوة.

Welcome to the Siwa Oasis!

PLACES TO SEE



Salt Lake^[1]

swim and take photos^[2]

Desert

see sunset^[3]

LOCAL FOOD



Sweet dates

fresh^[4] from palm trees

Good olive oil

excellent price

WHAT TO WEAR



Daytime

summer clothes

Night time

- bring a jacket

Book now^[5] : ☎ +2010xxxxxxx

siwa@trip.com

٥. احجز الان

٤. طازج

٣. غروب الشمس

٢. صور فوتوغرافية

١. بحيرة مالحة

General Exercises

on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. At the Salt Lake, we can swim and take [photos / jobs]
2. In the desert, we can see [sunset / Pyramids]
3. There are sweet [clothes / dates] in Siwa Oasis.
4. We wear [winter / summer] clothes at daytime.

2 Reorder to make sentences.

1. the weather – the – How – morning – is – in ?
.....

2. up – to climb – They – early – the mountain – wake.
.....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

visitors – olive – visit – Lake – Oasis

Siwa Oasis is an amazing place in Egypt. Many people [1] it every year to enjoy the nature. You can do many activities there. You can swim in the Salt [2] Siwa [3] is famous for the sweet dates. They are fresh from palm trees. It's also famous for its good [4] oil.

Read the text and answer the questions.

By Tarek

March 15, 2024

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt.

They wake up early to climb and wear warm clothes because it's cold.

Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures.

At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history.

St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tourists see colorful along the way.

a. flowers

b. plants

c. birds

d. rocks

2. St. Catherine Monastery is

a. low

b. near

c. modern

d. old

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where is St. Catherine Mountain?

4. What do tourists wear when they climb the mountain ?

• **5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. The turtle swims [on] the pond.

2. The farm is [behind] to the factory.

3. Ahlam is standing [next] Manar and Nour.

4. The kitchen is [on] front of the living room.

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

1. what places do you want to visit

2. He made a leaflet about siwa Oasis

• **7 Write a blog post of Three sentences about [18-24] using the following guiding elements. Your name is Tarek.**



A visit to St. Catherine Mountain

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :



warm clothes

- adventure

- old monastery

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas or pieces of information



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.



التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في وصف علاقة بين شخصين، حدثين، فكرتين أو معلومتين.



مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال علي قراءة النص جيداً أكثر من مرة للتمكن من فهم الترابط الموجود بين الأفكار والمعلومات الواردة في النص.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Our city has many important places that help people every day. One important place is the school. Students go there to learn and meet friends. Teachers help them, and the library has many books to read or borrow. Another important place is the hospital. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better.



1. Where can people read books ?

- In the library.

2. Why is the hospital an important place ?

- Because doctors and nurses help sick people feel better.

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in south Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history.

St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

1. Where's St. Catherine Mountain ?

2. What do tourists do at the top of St. Catherine Mountain ?

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٠ جملة].

1 Amazing places in Egypt

The Pyramids in Egypt are very nice^[1]. Tourists take many pictures there^[2]. They can ride camels, too^[3]. The Egyptian Museum is an amazing place^[4]. It has many treasures to see^[5]. Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar is a busy market^[6]. Many people go there to buy gifts^[7].

2 Places in your city

All places in my city are important^[8]. One important place is the school^[9]. Students go to school to learn and meet friends^[10]. The hospital is also a very important place^[11]. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better^[12]. The post office helps us stay connected^[13]. People send letters and packages at the post office^[14].

3 St. Catherine Mountain

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt^[15]. They wake up early to climb the mountain^[16]. They wear warm clothes because it is cold^[17]. Along the way, they see colorful rocks^[18]. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature and adventure^[19]. People can enjoy the natural world there^[20].

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء

Review

Prepositions of Place

in في - on على - in front of أمام
next to بجانب - between بين
behind خلف

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 The book is [in] the table.	on	نستخدم [on] بمعنى على
2 The Sphinx is next [at] the Pyramids.	to	نستخدم [to] لوجود [next]
3 The boat is [under] the Nile River.	on	نستخدم [on] بمعنى على سطح ماء [نهر النيل]
4 The post office is [next] the school and hospital.	between	نستخدم [between] لوجود مكانين

Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة. Write the reason.

1 We can find many books..... [on] the library.	in	.....
2 The cat is in front [off] the box.	of	.....
3 The hospital is [between] to the school.	next	.....
4 My family picture is [in] the wall.	on	.....

◀ اكتب التصحيح. Write the correction.

1 The cat is [next] the bed and the table.	.....	لوجود مكانين
2 The car is [on] front of the park.	.....	لوجود front of في الجملة
3 The gifts are [on] the bazaar.	.....	لان الهدايا موجودة في البازار
4 The museum is next [of] the post office.	.....	لوجود next

4

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

الجملة الخبرية

1	work - tour - a - I - guide - as.
2	treasures - It - many - has.
3	mountain - the - to climb - They - early - wake up.
4	colorful - Tourists - rocks - see.
5	mall - stores - many - The shopping - has.
6	help - people - Doctors - sick.
7	are - nice - The Pyramids - very.
8	has - of - trees - The Siwa - lots - Oasis.
9	has - books - The library - many.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
They	visit	the old monastery.
	wake up	
		many books.

الجملة الأمرية

1	warm - Wear - clothes.
2	natural - Enjoy - world - the.
3	in - bin - Throw - the - trash.

1	2	3
Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
	Bring	your jacket.

الجملة الاستفهامية

1	can - Where - go - we - to borrow - books?
2	do - Which places - like - to - you - visit?
3	can - people - What - do - the post office - at?
4	at the Pyramids - What - tourists - do - do?

1	2	3	4	5
كلمة استفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
Where	will	they	go	to buy gifts?
		we		



Review on Unit 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الرابعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

tour guide	مرشد سياحي
Pyramids	الاهرامات
ride a camel	يركب جمل
Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصرى
gifts	هدايا
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة
tourists	سياح
history	تاريخ
packages	طرود بريدية
stores	متاجر
treasures	كنوز

Pronunciation

p → /p/



pond
بركة ماء



peak
قمة جبل



pan
طاسة

b → /b/



bat
خفاش



bin
سلة مهملات



bear
دب

Language in use

Prepositions of place

- We use prepositions of place to show where things are.

- نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنذكر مكان شيء ما.



behind خلف



in front of أمام



on على



in فى



between بين



next to بجانب

General Exercises | on Unit 4

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's your favorite place in your city ?

.....

2. What does the shopping mall have ?

.....

3. What can people do their ?

.....

4. What place is behind the shopping mall ?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are a lot of in the museums.

a. packages b. treasures c. stores d. letters

2. I bought a/an for my mom's birthday.

a. view b. adventure c. nature d. gift

3. The bird is the tree.

a. between b. on c. next d. front

4. The chair is two tables

a. between b. in c. next d. on

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

monastery – warm – people – rocks – pictures

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear [1] clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful [2] and small plants, and some tourists take [3] At the top, they visit the old [4] and learn about its history.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our city has many important places. These places help people every day. One of these places is the post office. It is next to a big hospital. At the post office, people send letters and packages. They send them to family and friends. The post office helps people stay connected.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People send at the post office.

a. emails b. meals c. packages d. projects

2. The post office helps people stay
a. connected b. healthy c. friendly d. honest

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where is the post office?
.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

• **5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. My school is [on] the park and the museum.
2. The vase is [in] the table.
3. The garage is in front [to] the shopping mall.
4. The lamp is next [of] the desk.

• **6 Reorder to make sentences.**

1. works - He - as - guide - a tour.
.....
2. many - places - interesting - has - Egypt.
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.**

Schools

Guiding elements :

- subject - learn - library
.....
.....
.....
.....

The Story

• **8 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Wanda's sent a letter to Miss Mason.
a. mom b. dad c. sister d. neighbor
2. Peggy and Maddie wanted to write a/an to Wanda.
a. email b. letter c. text message d. report

B. Answer the following questions.

1. What competition did Miss Mason announce?
.....
2. Who drew all the beautiful dresses ?
.....

UNIT

5

A Day at Work

يوم في العمل

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Discuss significance of different jobs/uniforms
- مناقشة أهمية الوظائف المختلفة والأزياء الخاصة بهم
- Use superlative adjectives in sentences
- استخدام صفات التفضيل في جمل

Reading

- Answer comprehension questions about different jobs according to the information in a reading text
- الإجابة عن أسئلة فهم متعلقة بالوظائف المختلفة وفقًا للمعلومات الواردة في نص القراءة

- Identify main ideas in a story setting

- التعرف على الأفكار الرئيسية في مكان وزمان القصة

Listening

- Identify the roles of different jobs in a conversation
- التعرف على أدوار الوظائف المختلفة من خلال الاستماع إلى محادثة
- Produce long vowel sounds with silent 'e'
- نطق الأصوات الممدودة للكلمات التي تنتهي بالحرف الصامت 'e'

Writing

- Write non-fiction texts to reflect the components of a paragraph about jobs
- كتابة نصوص (قصص) واقعية لتعكس مكونات فقرة إنشائية عن الوظائف
- Provide a different ending to a story
- قدم نهاية مختلفة لقصة





I

Vocabulary

► Key vocabulary



job	وظيفة	patients	مرضى	uniform	زى موحد
vest	سترة/ قميص [بدون اكمام]	costume	زى خاص	helmet	خوذة

► Extra vocabulary

coat	معطف	dear	عزيزي/عزيزتي	health	صحة
cap	قبعة	sick people	المرضى	fires	نيران/ حرائق

► Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present	Past
design يصمم	designed
check يفحص / يختبر	checked
save ينقذ	saved
stop يوقف	stopped

Irregular

Present	Past
wear يرتدي	wore
grow up يكبر	grew up
do يفعل	did

► Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل	هيا بنا	design buildings	يصمم منشآت/ مباني
care for	يعتني بـ	grow up	يكبر
stop fires	يوقف / يطفئ الحرائق	Well done !	أحسنتم صنعًا!

• Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Word الكلمة	Job description وصف الوظيفة
A doctor	helps [checks the health of] sick people. الطبيب يساعد [يفحص صحة] المرضى.
An engineer	designs new buildings. المهندس يصمم مبانى جديدة.
A nurse	helps the doctors and patients. الممرضة تساعد الأطباء والمرضى.
A police officer	protects the people. رجل الشرطة يحمى الأشخاص.
A firefighter	saves people from fires. رجل الإطفاء ينقذ الناس من الحرائق.

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Different jobs	doctors - sick	Doctors wear white coats and help sick people.
	engineers - design	Engineers wear yellow helmets and design new buildings.
	nurses - patients	Nurses help the doctors and care for the patients.
	firefighters - fires	Firefighters save people from fire.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The students should wear their school during school hours.
a. coats b. helmets c. uniforms d. boats
- The doctor wears a long white
a. hat b. coat c. helmet d. shirt
- I wear a/an to protect my head.
a. helmet b. umbrella c. belt d. coat
- A/An designs new buildings.
a. doctor b. engineer c. police officer d. teacher
- A helps sick people.
a. police officer b. teacher c. firefighter d. doctor
- A/An helps doctors at the hospital.
a. engineer b. firefighter c. teacher d. nurse
- What's your ? - I'm a teacher.
a. team b. job c. school d. hobby
- The brave stopped the fire.
a. doctors b. nurses c. firefighters d. farmers
- Doctors our health.
a. check b. fix c. stop d. build

II Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

When I grow up

Pop Quiz

تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Ms. Hala is talking to her students about what they want to be when they grow up .

تتحدث الأستاذة هالة مع طلابها عن ماذا يريدون أن يكونوا عندما يكبروا.

Ms. Hala : Good morning, dear students! Let's talk about your **costumes**^[1].

الأستاذة هالة : صباح الخير، طلابي الأعزاء ! هيا نتحدث عن زيكم الخاص.

Sara : I'm a doctor. I wear a white **coat**^[2].

سارة : أنا طبيبة. أرتدي معطف أبيض.

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your job ?

الأستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعلين في مهنتك ؟

Sara : I help **sick**^[3] people and **check**^[4] their health.

سارة : أساعد المرضى وافحص صحتهم.



Ali : I'm an engineer. I wear a yellow **helmet**^[5].

علي : أنا مهندس. أرتدي خوذة صفراء اللون.

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your job ?

الأستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعل في مهنتك ؟

Ali : I **design**^[6] new buildings.

علي : أصمم مباني جديدة.

Talia : I'm a nurse. I wear a blue **uniform**^[7].

تاليا : أنا ممرضة. ارتدي زي أزرق اللون.

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your job ?

الأستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعلين في مهنتك ؟

Talia : I help the doctors and care for the **patients**^[8].

تاليا : أساعد الأطباء و اعني بالمرضى.

Omar : I'm a **firefighter**^[9]. I wear a blue uniform.

عمر : أنا رجل إطفاء، أرتدي زي أزرق اللون.

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your job ?

الأستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعل في مهنتك ؟

Omar : I stop fires and **save**^[10] people.

عمر : اخمد النيران وأنقذ الناس.

Ms. Hala : All your jobs are really important. Well done!

الأستاذة هالة : كل وظائفكم مهمة حقًا. أحسنتم!

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn

1. The firefighter stops

a. water

b. pollution

c. **fires**

d. rocks

Practice

2. Doctors people's health.

a. check

b. ask

c. draw

d. wear

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.



1. A doctor wears a white coat. He helps patients.
يرتدى الطبيب معطف أبيض اللون. فهو يساعد المرضى.

2. A police officer protects people.

يحمي ضابط الشرطة الناس.



3. An engineer wears a yellow helmet and a vest.
يرتدى المهندس خوذة صفراء اللون وقميص بدون أكمام.

4. A firefighter stops fire and save people.

يقوم رجل المطافي بإخماد النيران وإنقاذ الناس.



5. A nurse helps the doctors and patients.

تساعد الممرضة الأطباء والمرضى.

III Language Functions

★ Asking about different jobs :

السؤال عن الوظائف المختلفة :



What do you do at your job ?

ماذا تفعل في وظيفتك ؟

- I help sick people and check their health.
أساعد المرضى وأفحص صحتهم.



General Exercises

on Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Nabila is a/an
a. doctor b. teacher c. nurse d. engineer
- She works in a big hospital in
a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Giza d. Port Said
- She wears a uniform.
a. yellow b. blue c. red d. pink
- Nabila is very and helpful.
a. fast b. smart c. tall d. kind

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A/An nurse at the hospital.
a. to work b. work c. works d. working
- I want to be an engineer when I up.
a. to grow b. growing c. grow d. grows
- The wears a white uniform and a cap.
a. guide b. farmer c. police officer d. teacher
- Yesterday, firefighters worked two hours to stop the
a. job b. fire c. lesson d. race

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box.

design - protects - fire - patients

- Doctors help people who are to get better.
- Engineers new buildings.
- A police officer people.
- Firefighters save people from

4 Punctuate the following.

- what do you do at your job
.....
- engineers wear a yellow helmet
.....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

What do you want to be when you grow up ?

Guiding elements :

- doctor
- sick people
- feel better

► Jobs I love !
► Language in use



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

mentor	مرشد تعليمي	voice-over actor	مؤدي صوتي	wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية
shy	خجول	voice	صوت [بشري]	laughs	ضحكات
brave	شجاع	puppet	دمية		

• Extra vocabulary

good marks	درجات جيدة	high	مرتفع	low	منخفض
smart	ذكي	smile	ابتسامة	fun	مرح
interesting	شيق - ممتع	slow	بطيء	exciting	ممتع
faraway	بعيد	cartoons	رسوم متحركة	fast	سريع / بسرعة
show	عرض	nature	الطبيعة	character	شخصية
helpful	مفيد	wise	حكيم	young	صغير السن
wild	بري	loud	عال		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
wait ينتظر	waited	become يصبح	became
use يستخدم	used	find يجد	found
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	get يحصل على	got
guess يخمن	guessed	tell يخبر	told
		feel يشعر	felt

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة	wait a long time to	ينتظر وقت طويل لـ
take photos/pictures	يلتقط الصور	do many shows	يقدم العديد من العروض
tell stories	يروى قصص	little voices	أصوات خافتة / صغيرة
make voices for cartoons	يؤدي أصوات للرسوم المتحركة	do helpful work	يقوم بعمل مفيد

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Four amazing jobs	mentor-shy	A mentor helps shy, young students become brave.
	wildlife photographer	A wildlife photographer takes pictures of wild animals in faraway places.
	puppets – stories	Salma uses puppets to tell stories and do many shows for children.
	voice-over actor	A voice-over actor makes voices for cartoons.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- A helps young students learn and grow.
a. mentor b. vet c. doctor d. firefighter
- Talia can't sing in the show. She is
a. brave b. shy c. honest d. fast
- The smart photographer took great of the river.
a. jobs b. foods c. photos d. sounds
- Ali is He isn't afraid of dogs.
a. sad b. brave c. shy d. funny
- A takes pictures with a good camera.
a. mentor b. police officer c. firefighter d. photographer
- Leopards are animals.
a. water b. pet c. wild d. farm
- Listen ! This singer has a beautiful
a. class b. voice c. uniform d. hospital
- A voice-over can make different voices.
a. actor b. designer c. maker d. driver
- Kids love watching the puppet
a. voice b. match c. show d. race
- I love walking in watching green trees.
a. show b. marker c. picture d. nature

II Listening and Reading

Four Amazing Jobs

أربع وظائف رائعة

Pop Quiz

تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Noha is a mentor. She does very kind and helpful work! She helps young students learn and grow. "I help shy students become brave," she says. "When they get good marks, it feels so nice. It makes me happy when they do well!"

تعمل نهى كمرشد تعليمي. فهي تقوم بعمل لطيف ومفيد للغاية! إنها تساعد الطلاب الصغار في التعلم والنمو. تقول نهى: «أنا أساعد الطلاب الذين يشعرون بالخجل ليصبحوا شجعاناً. فعندما يحصلون على درجات جيدة، أشعر بسعادة غامرة. هذا مما يجعلني سعيدة للغاية عندما يحققون النجاح!»

Amr is a wildlife photographer. He has an interesting job! He takes pictures of wild animals. "I find the biggest lions and the smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in faraway places. Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture!"

عمرو يعمل كمصور للحياة البرية. فلديه وظيفة ممتعة! فهو يلتقط صوراً للحيوانات البرية. يقول: «أنا أجد أكبر الأسود وأصغر الطيور. ألتقط صوراً رائعة في أماكن بعيدة، أحياناً أنتظر وقتاً طويلاً للحصول على أفضل صورة!»

Salma works with puppets. She has a great job! She uses puppets to tell stories. "I do many shows for children," she says. "I love seeing their big smiles and hearing their loud laughs. It's fun when children enjoy the show!"

سلمى تعمل مع الدمى. لديها وظيفة رائعة! فهي تستخدم الدمى لسرد قصصاً. تقول سلمى: «أقدم العديد من العروض للأطفال. أحب أن أرى ابتسامتهم العريضة على

وجوههم وأن أسمع صوت ضحكاتهم العالية. إنه أمر ممتع عندما يستمتع الأطفال بالعرض!»



Adel is a voice-over actor. He has an exciting job! He makes voices for cartoons. "I can make high voices and low voices," he says. "I talk very fast or very slow. I make little voices for small characters and loud voices for large ones!"

يعمل عادل كمؤدي صوتي. فلديه وظيفة شيقة! يقوم بأداء أصوات الرسوم المتحركة فيقول: «أستطيع إصدار أصوات عالية ومنخفضة». «أتحدث بسرعة كبيرة أو ببطء

شديد. أؤدي أصواتاً خافتة للشخصيات الصغيرة وأصواتاً عالية للشخصيات الكبيرة»



III

Language in use

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

Usage : الاستخدام

We use superlative adjectives to show the greatest degree of something.

- نستخدم صفات التفضيل لنوضح أعلى درجة من صفة شيء ما.

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

Formation : التكوين



.....the + short adj. + est

ex : tall → the tallest small → the smallest old → the oldest

ex This tree is the tallest tree in the park.

Notes

- When an adjective ends in "-e", we add "-st" to the end.

⚠️ لاحظ : إذا انتهت الصفة بـ "e" فإننا نضيف "-st" في نهاية الصفة.

ex nice → the nicest

⇒ Mona is the nicest friend I have.

- If an adjective ends in:

a vowel

حرف متحرك

+

a consonant

حرف ساكن



we double the consonant before adding [-est] to the end.

نضاعف الحرف الساكن قبل إضافة "-est" في نهاية الصفة.

ex big → the biggest

thin → the thinnest

⇒ Elephants are the biggest animals in the zoo.

- If an adjective ends in:

a consonant

حرف ساكن

+

-y



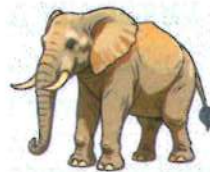
we change "-y" to "-i" and add "-est" to the end.

نحول حرف "يا" إلى "إي" ونضيف "-est" في نهاية الصفة

ex happy → the happiest

busy → the busiest

⇒ Nora is the happiest girl in the class.





Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Hatem is the [smart] student in our class.
2. Hurghada is the [nice] place for diving.
3. Which animal is [than] fastest ?
4. I think turtles are the [slow].
5. **SB** My bag is the [heavier] bag.
6. My teacher is the [great] one.
7. The giraffe is [then] tallest animal.
8. My grandpa is the [kinder] person.
9. I need the [nice] bike for my child.

2 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. Summer is the hot season in Egypt. [.....]
2. Ali is the young in his family. [.....]
3. My brother is the funny person I know. [.....]
4. He is than bravest firefighter in the town. [.....]
5. My grandpa is the old person in my family. [.....]

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. **SB** August is the month of the year.
a. hot b. hotter c. hotter than d. hottest
2. Today is coldest day of the year.
a. then b. the c. that d. this
3. My brother is the player.
a. fast b. faster than c. fastest d. faster
4. The lion is the animal.
a. stronger b. strongest c. strong d. stronger than

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- He studied very hard for his exams to get good
a. marks b. places c. facts d. voices
- Mickey Mouse is my favorite character.
a. wild b. cartoon c. real d. work
- The elephant is the animal.
a. heavy b. heavier
c. heaviest d. as heavy
- Basant is the girl in the class.
a. fastest b. fast c. as fast d. faster

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

long - lions - job - faraway - animals

This is my uncle, Amr. He takes pictures of wild [1] in nature. He finds the biggest [2] and the smallest birds. He takes great photos in [3] places. Sometimes, he waits for a very [4] time to get the best picture. He likes wild animals and being in nature.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Mariam is 25 years old. She works as a mentor. She does very kind and helpful work! She helps young students learn and grow. She helps shy students become brave. Mariam feels very happy when her students get good marks. She spends a lot of time searching for new ideas to help students do well.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- This text is about the job of a / an
a. firefighter b. actor c. mentor d. photographer
- Mariam spends much time searching for new
a. students b. places c. ideas d. jobs

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When does Mariam feel happy?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

• **4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. What is the [small] bird in the world?
2. She is the [short] girl in the class.
3. This song is [then] slowest in the show.
4. The Nile River is [long] river in the world.

• **5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.**

1. This park is the large. [.....]
2. Shady takes the great photos. [.....]
3. Turtles are the slow animals. [.....]
4. ~~My~~ dad is the strong man. [.....]

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

1. a wildlife photographer is an interesting job

.....

2. i want to work with puppets

.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Amazing jobs

Guiding elements :

- wildlife photographer
- picture
- cartoons

.....
.....
.....
.....

Story Time : The Last House

Pronunciation



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

carpenter	نجار	fit	يناسب / يلائم
skilled	ماهر / ذو مهارة	shock	صدمة
furniture	أثاث	board	لوح [خشبي]
crooked	مائل / منحني / معوج	regret	ندم
gift	هدية		

• Extra vocabulary

wooden	خشبي	king	ملك	final	نهائي
hard work	عمل جاد	weak	ضعيف	nail	مسمار
village	قرية	windows	نوافذ	wonderful	رائع
usual	عادي / تقليدي	carelessly	باهمال	request	طلب
kindly	بلطف	careful	حريص		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past		Present		Past	
promise	يوعد	promised		hammer	يدق	hammered	
admire	يعجب بـ	admired		smile	يتسم	smiled	
rest	يستريح	rested		repair	يصلح	repaired	
decide	يقرر	decided		remember	يتذكر	remembered	
agree	يقبل	agreed		retire	يتقاعد عن العمل	retired	

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• from far away	من بعيد	• grew tired	أصبح متعباً
• after a lifetime of	بعد فترة من	• over the years	على مدار سنوات
• give his best / do his best	ي بذل قصارى جهده	• turn red with regret	يحمر وجهه من الندم
• build one last house	يبنى بيتاً أخيراً	• from that day on	منذ ذلك اليوم
• board by board	لوحاً تلو الآخر	• poor work	عمل رديء / ضعيف الجودة
• stand in shock	يقف مصدوماً	• his heart wasn't in it	لم يكن متحمساً له

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The last house	skilled	Sami was a skilled carpenter.
	strong - furniture	Sami built strong houses and beautiful furniture.
	admire - work	People admired Sami's work.
	tired - stop	After a lifetime of hard work, Sami grew tired and decided to stop building.
	build - house	The king asked Sami to build one last house.
	weak - doors	Sami used weak wood to build the house and he didn't check the windows or the doors.
	shock - house	Sami stood in shock when he knew the house was for him.
	regret - promise	Sami felt regret and promised to always do his best.

• Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
fit	to be the right size أن يكون بالحجم المناسب
wooden	made of wood مصنوع من الخشب
skilled	very good at doing something جيداً جداً في فعل شيء ما
promise	if you promise to do something, it means that you will definitely do it إذا وعدت بفعل شيء ما، فهذا يعني أنك ستفعله بالتأكيد



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- They cut trees to make chairs.
a. glass b. wooden c. plastic d. music
- I like this jacket, it me.
a. fits b. hits c. hears d. sits
- The word "....." means very good at doing something.
a. greedy b. lazy c. skilled d. angry
- I my parents to study hard to get good marks.
a. promised b. heard c. fixed d. talked
- The uses wood to make beds.
a. actor b. mentor c. painter d. carpenter
- He is a very skilled person. We all his work.
a. refuse b. throw c. hate d. admire
- Beds, chairs and tables are
a. colors b. furniture c. tools d. jobs

II

Listening and Reading

★ Listen, look and read. استمع، انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
وتوضو الاستماع

The Last House

The Beginning

Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. For many years, he built strong houses and beautiful furniture. People admired his work, and some traveled from far away just to see his wooden chairs and tables.

سامي نجارًا ماهرًا حيث كان يعيش في قرية هادئة. وكان للعديد من السنوات يبني منازل قوية ويصنع أثاثًا جميلًا. أعجب الناس بعمله وكان البعض يسافر من أماكن بعيدة فقط لرؤية الكراسي والطاولات الخشبية التي يقوم بصنعها.



The Middle

After a lifetime of hard work, Sami grew tired. He decided it was time to rest and stop building. But before he could retire, the village king came to him with a request. "Please build one last house," the king said. "It will be your final gift to the village."

بعد حياة مليئة بالعمل الشاق، شعر سامي بالتعب. قرر أنه قد حان الوقت للراحة والتوقف عن البناء. وقبل أن يتمكن من التقاعد جاء إليه ملك القرية بطلب فقال: «من فضلك ابن بيتًا أخيرًا»، «سيكون هديتك الأخيرة للقرية».

Sami agreed, but his heart was not in it. He used weak wood. He didn't check the windows or the doors. The windows didn't fit. The doors were crooked. The house looked nothing like his usual careful work.

وافق سامي، لكن لم يكن متحمسًا لهذا العمل. فقام باستخدام خشبًا ضعيفًا. ولم يفحص النوافذ والأبواب. فلم تكن النوافذ مناسبة وكانت الأبواب مائلة، لم يشبه المنزل عمله المتقن المعتاد.

The End

When the house was finished, Sami gave the keys to the king. The king smiled kindly and said, "This house is for you, Sami. It's a gift for all your wonderful work over the years."

Sami stood in shock. His own poor work was now his home. His face turned red with regret. He had built this house carelessly - and now he had to live in it.

From that day on, Sami promised to always give his best, no matter how tired or busy he felt. He slowly repaired the house, board by board, and made it strong and beautiful again.

And with each nail he hammered, Sami remembered who he truly was.

عندما انتهى سامي من بناء البيت، سلم سامي المفتاح إلى الملك. ابتسم الملك بلطف وقال : «هذا البيت لك يا سامي. إنه هدية لك تقديرًا لكل عملك الرائع على مر السنين».

وقف سامي مصدومًا. لقد أصبح عمله الرديء الآن منزله. واحمر وجهه خجلًا وندقًا. لقد بنى هذا البيت بإهمال - والآن سيضطر أن يعيش فيه. منذ ذلك اليوم، قطع سامي على نفسه عهدًا بأن يبذل أفضل ما لديه دائمًا مهما شعر بالتعب أو الانشغال. أخذ يصلح البيت ببطء، لوخا بعد لوح، حتى جعله قويًا وجميلًا مرة أخرى.

ومع كل مسمازا كان يدقه، تذكر سامي من يكون حقًا.

The moral : المغزى من القصة:

It's important to always do your best, even when no one is watching.

من المهم أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا، حتى عندما لا يكون أحدًا يشاهدنا.

III Pronunciation

► Long vowel sounds with silent "e".

أصوات الحروف المتحركة الممدودة مع حرف الـ "e" الصامت.

When a silent "-e" comes at the end of a word after one consonant, it makes the vowel before it a long vowel. This is like "rope" and "slide".

عندما يأتي حرف "e" الصامت (غير المنطوق) في نهاية الكلمة ويكون بعد حرف ساكن واحد فإنها تجعل الحرف المتحرك قبلها ينطق بصوته الممدود مثل كلمة "rope" و "slide".

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.



nine رقم ٩



gate بوابة



stone حجر



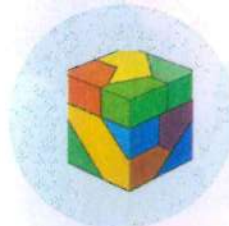
flute مزمارة / آلة الناي



slide زحليقة



face وجه



cube مكعب



rope حبل



Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters.



1. c _ b _



2. r _ p _



3. fl _ t _



4. g _ t _

2 Read and sort.

cube – rope – gate – flute – face – stone

a - e	u - e	o - e

3 Read and complete.

flute – slide – gate – stone

- I play on the in the park.
- My house has a very big
- My sister can play the

Master your skills

**كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية**

تمكنك من إتقان المهارات اللغوية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The word "....." means to be the right size.
a. strong b. fit c. loud d. heavy
- The carpenter the door of my house.
a. repaired b. slept c. planted d. heard
- Who is the boy ? - Ahmed.
a. tallest b. as tall c. tall d. taller
- The subject is English.
a. easy b. easier c. as easy d. easiest

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

gift - wood - carpenter - bad - repaired

Sami was a skilled [1] who lived in a quiet village. When the king asked him to build one last house, Sami did poor work and used weak [2] Later, he knew the house was a [3] for him. Sami felt regret. He promised to always do his best, no matter how tired or busy he felt. He slowly [4] the house.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

A carpenter is a skilled worker. He works in a workshop. He has a lot of tools to use. He uses wood to make furniture and houses. He knows how to choose good wood to make strong things. A carpenter's job is very useful in the community.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A carpenter has a lot of to use.
a. tools b. colors c. plants d. subjects
- A carpenter is a worker.
a. slow b. skilled c. brave d. lazy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does a carpenter work?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

• **4 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. She has **[that]** shortest hair in the class.
2. Farah is the **[young]** girl in the team.
3. What is the **[cold]** country in the world?
4. She bought the **[nice]** dress.

• **5 Reorder to make sentences.**

1. a skilled - **Sami** - carpenter - was.

.....

2. the king - from - **What** - want - Sami - did ?

.....

• **6 Punctuate the following.**

1. he promised to do his best at work

.....

2. what is your father's job

.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of [18 – 24] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A carpenter

Guiding elements :

- wood
- furniture
- nails

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

hero	بطل	fire station	محطة إطفاء	protective	واقى
local	محلى	thick	سميك	equipment	معدات
bright	زاهى اللون / فاتح	stripes	خطوط [عريضة]	alarm	إنذار بالخطر
danger	خطر	water hoses	خراطيم المياه	firefighter	رجل إطفاء

• Extra vocabulary

heavy	ثقل	paper folding	طى الورق	tools	أدوات
truck	شاحنة	ready	جاهز	non-fiction = real-life	واقعى
ladder	سلم / درج متنقل	team	فريق	dangerous	خطير
oxygen tank	أسطوانة الأكسجين	part	جزء	origami	فن تشكيل الورق
safe	آمن	lives	الحيوات [جمع حياة]	art	فن

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

save	ينفذ
protect	يحمى
use	يستخدم

Past

saved
protected
used

Irregular

Present

fight	يقاتل / يصارع
keep	يحفظ
ring	يدق / يرن
put on	يرتدى
ride	يركب

Past

fought
kept
rang
put on
rode

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• proud to be	فخور أن يكون	• make ... up	يؤلف
• in danger	فى خطر	• fight fire	يتصدى للنيران
• make a difference	يحدث فارق	• keep ready	يجهز

Did you know ?

Origami is the Japanese art of paper folding. We can create amazing things with just paper.

هو فن يابانى متعلق بطى الورق. حيث نستطيع صنع أشياء رائعة باستخدام الورق فقط.

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Heroes who fight fires	work – fire station	Omar works at a local fire station.
	thick – uniform	Omar wears a thick protective uniform.
	equipment – truck	He checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready.
	tools – ladders	Omar uses special tools like water hoses, ladders, and oxygen tanks.
	make a difference	Omar likes helping others and making a difference.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The works at the fire station.
a. police officer b. doctor c. mechanic d. firefighter
- The firefighter wears a thick uniform.
a. protective b. colorful c. bright d. soft
- He became a because he saved people.
a. photo b. hero c. danger d. community
- The zebra has on its coat.
a. spots b. colors c. stripes d. circles
- An engineer wears a to keep his head safe.
a. coat b. helmet c. hero d. jacket
- The rings at 7 o'clock in the morning.
a. rope b. station c. alarm d. hose
- People are in when there's a fire.
a. safety b. danger c. rest d. break
- Firefighters use special like water hoses.
a. tools b. clothes c. places d. gifts
- Firefighters work hard to people's lives.
a. fight b. use c. save d. ring
- Students study hard to get for the exams.
a. nervous b. ill c. ready d. tired

II

Listening and Reading

★ Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Non-fiction (real - life) story

Heroes Who Fight Fires

قصة واقعية: أبطال يتصدون للحرائق

My neighbor^[1], Omar, is a firefighter^[2] at our local fire station^[3]. He wears a thick protective^[4] uniform with bright yellow stripes^[5] and a heavy helmet to keep him safe. Every day at the station, he checks his equipment^[6] and keeps the big red fire truck ready. He also makes sure everything is clean and in the right place. When the alarm rings, he quickly puts on his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in danger^[7]. He uses special tools like water hoses^[8], ladders, and oxygen tanks to fight fires and save people. Omar says the part he likes most about his job is saving lives and protecting^[9] our community. The work is dangerous, but he's proud^[10] to be a firefighter because he likes helping others and making a difference.

[1] جار

[2] رجل مطافئ

[3] محطة الإطفاء

[4] وقائي

[5] خطوط (عريضة)

[6] أدوات / معدات

[7] خطر

[8] خراطيم المياه

[9] حماية

[10] فخور

يعمل جاري عمر كرجل إطفاء في محطة الإطفاء المحلية. فهو يرتدي زياً واقياً سميكاً بخطوط صفراء زاهية اللون وخوذة ثقيلة لحمايته. فكل يوم في محطة الإطفاء، يقوم بفحص معداته ويجهز شاحنة الإطفاء الكبيرة ذات اللون الأحمر. يتأكد عمر أيضاً من أن كل شيء نظيف وفي مكانه الصحيح. عندما يرن جرس الإنذار، يرتدي عمر معداته بسرعة ويركب الشاحنة مع فرقة لمساعدة الناس المعرضين للخطر. فهو يستخدم أدوات خاصة مثل خراطيم المياه والسلالم وأسطوانات الأكسجين لمكافحة الحرائق وإنقاذ الناس. يقول عمر أن الجزء الأكثر تفضيلاً لديه في عمله هو إنقاذ الأرواح وحماية مجتمعنا. فهذا العمل يعتبر خطيراً جداً، لكنه فخور أن يكون رجل إطفاء لأنه يحب مساعدة الآخرين وإحداث فرقاً.



III Writing Skill

Writing a non-fiction text

كتابة نص واقعي

When you write a non-fiction text, ask yourself :

عند كتابة نص واقعي، اسأل نفسك :

Is the information true ?

هل المعلومات المستخدمة صحيحة ؟

Did I make anything up ?

هل قمت بتأليف شيئًا ما ؟

Non-fiction writing should include

يجب أن تشتمل الكتابة الواقعية على :

1 An introductory sentence
جملة مقدمة

"My neighbor, Omar, is a firefighter at our local fire station".

4 A closing sentence
جملة خاتمة

"The work is dangerous, but he's proud to be a firefighter."

2 Details that are all true
تفاصيل صحيحة

"He wears a thick protective uniform with bright yellow stripes."

3 Adjectives
صفات

"thick, special tools, big red fire truck."





Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

★ Write a non-fiction text about a teacher you know and you think he/she is a hero. Use the following guiding elements.

- What things does he/she use at work ?
- Where does he/she work ?
- What does he/she do every day ?
- How does he/she help people ?
- Why is his/her job helpful ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**A week is
enough**

مراجعة المنهج و التمكن منه في
اسبوع واحد فقط



General Exercises

on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Marwan is a/an
a. police officer b. firefighter c. farmer d. engineer
- He wears a thick uniform.
a. large b. thin c. protective d. soft
- He uses special tools to
a. teach students b. water plants
c. fight fires d. fix cars
- Marwan's job is
a. easy b. exciting c. boring d. dangerous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A fights fires.
a. nurse b. police officer c. carpenter d. firefighter
- My grandpa uses a long to water his garden.
a. hall b. hose c. house d. hole
- Cars are than buses.
a. fast b. faster c. as fast d. fastest
- What is the subject ?
a. easy b. easiest c. as easy d. easier

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ready - fire - saved - truck - house

Yesterday was a strange day in my neighborhood. There was a fire in my neighbor's (1) My dad called the fire station. The firefighters arrived quickly in their big red fire (2) They took ten minutes to stop the (3) They (4) our lives. They are heroes.

• **4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. It's the [big] turtle.
2. He sells the [cheap] sandwiches.
3. The farm is [then] quietest place.
4. This book is the [old] in our school library.

• **5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.**

1. English is easiest school subject. [.....]
2. The desert is the dry habitat. [.....]
3. He climbed the high mountain. [.....]
4. Which lake is the longer? [.....]

• **6 Rearrange to make sentences.**

1. makes - someone - What - a hero ?
.....
2. a thick - uniform - He - protective - wears.
.....

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

1. i'm proud to be a firefighter
.....
2. ' What makes your uncle a hero
.....

• **8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences about [18 - 24] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Firefighters

Guiding elements :

- protective uniform
- fire station
- dangerous

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد معنى مفردة لغوية أو عبارة في نص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة في تحديد معنى الكلمة، اقرأ النص جيداً ثم خمن المعنى.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Amr is a wildlife photographer. He has an interesting job! He takes pictures of wild animals. "I find the biggest lions and the smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in faraway places. Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture!"

شرح الحل تقرأ الفقرة جيداً لتحديد معاني الكلمات المستهدفة.

faraway بعيد / ناء interesting ممتع
1. The underlined word "interesting" is the opposite of

- a. amazing b. boring
c. good d. wonderful

2. The underlined word "faraway" is the opposite of

- a. near b. heavy c. thick d. strong

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. When the king asked him to make one last house, Sami did poor work and used weak wood. Later, he knew the house was a gift for him. Sami felt regret. He promised to always give his best in his job, no matter how tired or busy he felt.

1. The underlined word "weak" is the opposite of

- a. poor b. strong c. rich d. sick

2. The underlined word "gift" has the same meaning as

- a. story b. job c. lesson d. present

2

Important topics

مواضيع هامة



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٢ جملة).

1 Different jobs

All jobs are important^[1]. Doctors are very important for all of us^[2]. They help sick people and check their health^[3]. Engineers design new buildings^[4]. Nurses also play an important role^[5]. They help the doctors and care for the patients^[6]. Firefighters stop fires and save people^[7].

2 Amazing jobs

There are many special jobs around us^[8]. A mentor does very kind and helpful work^[9]. A mentor helps shy students become brave^[10]. A mentor feels so nice when students do well^[11]. A voice-over actor makes voices for cartoons^[12]. A voice-over actor can make high voices and low voices^[13].

3 A wildlife photographer

A wildlife photographer takes pictures of wild animals in nature^[14]. He finds the biggest animals and the smallest birds^[15]. He takes great photos in faraway places^[16]. He waits a very long time to get the best picture^[17]!

4 Heroes who fight fires

A firefighter works at a fire station^[18]. He wears a thick protective uniform^[19]. He checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready^[20]. When the alarm rings, he quickly puts on his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in danger^[21]. He uses special tools like water hoses, ladders, and oxygen tanks to fight fires and save people^[22].

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

◀ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Review

Superlative adjectives

صفات التفضيل

عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (واحد ومجموعة) نضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف [est] :

• ... the + short adjective + est ...

Ex : tall → the tallest

big → the biggest

nice → the nicest

happy → the happiest

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 This tree is [tall] in our garden.	the tallest	عند التفضيل نضيف للصفة القصيرة [est] وقبلها [the]
2 Omar is [nicest] friend I have.	the nicest	عند التفضيل نضع قبل الصفة القصيرة [est] وبعدها [the]
3 Who is the [fast] in the class?	fastest	عند التفضيل نضيف للصفة القصيرة [est] وقبلها [the]

Practice

◀ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

Write the reason.

1 Noha is the [happy] girl.	happiest	.....
2 The giraffes are [tall] animals.	the tallest	.....
3 August is the [hot] month of the year.	hottest	.....
4 The elephant is the [bigger] animal.	biggest	.....

Write the correction.

◀ اكتب التصحيح.

1 I have the [heavy] bag.	.....	عند التفضيل يضاف للصفة القصيرة [est] عندما ينتهي الفعل بـ [y] وقبلها حرف ساكن
2 The library is the [quiet] place to study in.	.....	عند التفضيل يضاف للصفة القصيرة [est]
3 The cheetah is [fast] animal.	.....	في صيغة التفضيل يضاف للصفة القصيرة [est] وقبلها [the]
4 My grandpa is the [wise] person I know.	.....	صيغة تفضيل لوجود [the]

4

Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1	is - Amr - photographer - a wildlife.
2	takes - Amir - photos - the greatest.
3	built - The carpenter - houses - strong.
4	protects - A police officer - people.
5	mentor - Noha - the - is - kindest.
6	saves - from - A firefighter - people - fires.
7	likes - He - difference - a - making.
8	a - was - Sami - carpenter - skilled.

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
A doctor	wears	a white coat.

٢ الجملة الأمرية

1	one - Build - house - last.
2	do - your - Always - best.
3	everything - Make sure - clean - is.

1	2	3
Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
	Check	your equipment.

٣ الجملة الاستفهامية

1	Ali - use - at work - What things - does?
2	does - What - wear - a doctor?
3	want - What - you - do - be - to?
4	did - Why - Sami - working - stop?
5	a nurse - What - does - do?

1	2	3	4	5
كلمة استفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل	باقي السؤال
How	does	Noha	help	shy students ?
What things				



Review on Unit 5

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الخامسة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

doctor	طبيب
nurse	ممرضة
teacher	مُعلم
engineer	مهندس
firefighter	رجل إطفاء
mentor	المرشد / الموجه
shy	خجول
brave	شجاع
wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية
puppet	دُمية
voice-over actor	مؤدي صوتي
hero	بطل
thick	سميك
protective	واقى
equipment	معدات

Pronunciation

• Long vowels with silent "e"

  
 nine رقم 9 slide زحليقة face وجه

  
 gate بوابة flute آلة الناي cube مكعب

 
 stone حجر robe حبل

Language in use

Usage الاستخدام

Superlatives adjectives صفات التفضيل

We use superlative adjectives to show the greatest degree of something.

نستخدم صفات التفضيل للتعبير عن الأعلى درجة في صفة لشيء ما.

Formation

Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

the + short adj. + est صفة + est

تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل بإضافة [-est] للصفة القصيرة ونضع قبلها [the] كالتالي :

ex. - fast → the fastest

• لاحظ أن :

١. يُضاف [-st] فقط بعد الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [-e] :

ex. - large → the largest close → the closest

٢. يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبقاً بصوت متحرك ثم يُضاف [-est] :

ex. - big → the biggest thin → the thinnest

٣. الصفات المنتهية بحرف [-y] مسبقاً بحرف ساكن تتحول [-y] إلى [-i] ثم يضاف [-est] :

ex. - dry → the driest happy → the happiest

General Exercises | on Unit 5

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب
التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My favorite job is a
a. firefighter b. police officer
c. wildlife photographer d. mentor
- Wildlife photographers take pictures of
a. factories b. actors c. buildings d. wild animals
- They can take great photos in places.
a. smallest b. tallest c. nearest d. faraway
- They wait a long time to get the best !
a. picture b. project c. voice d. place

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A/An designs new buildings.
a. farmer b. nurse c. engineer d. firefighter
- A voice-over actor makes for cartoons.
a. homes b. shapes c. colors d. voices
- Dalia is the friend I have.
a. nice b. nicer c. as nice d. nicest
- Is Sara than Mona ?
a. old b. as old c. oldest d. older

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

brave - wild - station - protect - uniform

I am a police officer. I work in a police [1] I wear a white [2] and a cap. I work hard to [3] the people in the community. I like my job. It's a dangerous job, but I love helping people. A police officer needs to be [4] and helpful.

4 Read the text and write T (True) or F (False).

Ali is a firefighter. He wears a thick protective uniform with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep him safe. Every day at the station, he checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready. When people need help, Ali and his team quickly drive to help them. He uses a long water hose to stop fires. He also has special ladders for tall buildings. Ali saves people and pets from the fires. Ali loves his job because he likes saving people and making a difference.

1. Ali is a police officer. []
2. Ali uses a short water hose to stop fires. []
3. Ali has special ladders for tall buildings. []
4. Ali hates his job. []

• **5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. Nada's house is the [near] house to me.
2. Basketball players are the [tall] in the club.
3. She is the [braver] girl in her class.
4. Sami built the [weak] house.

• **6 Reorder to make sentences.**

1. a nurse - What - do - does ?

.....

2. with - She - puppets - works.

.....

• **7 Punctuate the following.**

why is your job important

.....

• **8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences about [18-24] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Jobs

Guiding elements :

- sick people
- design
- fires

The Story

• **9 [A] Read and circle the correct answer.**

1. Wanda Peggy and Maddie for writing a letter to her.
a. thanked b. bullied c. threw d. saw
2. The experience Peggy and Maddie forever.
a. harmed b. forgot c. asked d. changed

[B] Answer the following questions.

1. What did Maddie and Peggy decide to do for Wanda?

.....

2. How did Wanda feel when she got the letter?

.....

Story The Hundred Dresses

الفساتين المائة
By : "Eleanor Estes"



Learning outcomes :

Speaking

- Express their favorite character in the story
- التعبير عن الشخصية المفضلة في القصة
- Discuss the moral lessons of a story
- مناقشة الدروس المستفادة من القصة

Reading

- Answer questions about the story setting, character and events
- الإجابة عن أسئلة متعلقة بمكان وزمان القصة والشخصيات والأحداث

- Identify the elements of a story
- تحديد عناصر القصة
- Answer critical questions based on the story's events
- الإجابة عن أسئلة التفكير النقدي المتعلقة بأحداث القصة

Listening

- Understand the sequence of events in a narrated story
- فهم تسلسل الأحداث في قصة

Writing

- Write a letter based on the story's events
- كتابة رسالة [خطاب] بناءً على أحداث القصة

Story Map

خريطة القصة

The characters الشخصية



Wanda



Peggy



Maddie



Miss Mason

The setting المكان والزمان

Places الأماكن

- At a small school في مدرسة صغيرة
- In the playground في ملعب المدرسة

Time الوقت

- On the school day في يوم دراسي
- Every morning كل صباح

The moral of the story

- We shouldn't judge others by their appearance.
لا يجب أن نحكم على الأشخاص من مظهرهم.

Story plot حبكة القصة



Beginning

- Wanda was a quiet girl who sits in the back of the classroom.
- Wanda always wore the same faded blue dress every day.
- The popular girls at school, Peggy and Maddie, annoyed Wanda every morning.



Middle

- One day, Miss Mason, the teacher, announced about a drawing competition.
- Wanda drew and designed a hundred beautiful drawings of dresses of all colors.
- Wanda won the competition, but she wasn't there to receive her medal.



End

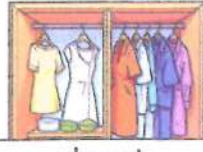
- Wanda was absent for several days.
- Wanda's dad sent a letter saying that Wanda's family moved to a big city.
- Peggy and Maddie felt terrible and sorry for their behavior.
- Peggy and Maddie sent a letter to Wanda to apologize.

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور



dress فستان



closet
خزانة [دولاب] ملابس



playground
ملعب



competition
مسابقة



announce
يعلن



drawings
رسومات



sign
توقيع / يوقع



letter خطاب



winner
فائز



medal
ميدالية



laugh
يضحك

Study these definitions. ادرس هذه التعريفات.

Word	Meaning	Definition
faded	باهت	light in color because it is old or used فاتح اللون لأنه قديم أو مستخدم
popular	محبوب / مشهور	known by many people مشهور من قبل الكثير من الناس
annoying	يزعج	making you feel unhappy or a little angry يجعلك تشعر بعدم السعادة أو بالغضب قليلاً
absent	غائب	not in a place ليس في مكان
notice	يلاحظ	to see or hear something أن ترى أو تسمع شيئاً ما
behavior	سلوك	the way someone acts طريقة تصرف شخص ما
expensive	غالي الثمن	costs a lot of money يكلف الكثير من المال
bullying	تنمر	hurting or scaring other people إيذاء أو تخويف الأشخاص الآخرين
apologize	يعتذر	to say "I'm sorry" when you do something wrong أن تقول "أنا آسف" عندما تفعل شيئاً خاطئاً

Main points on the story

The Beginning

- Wanda was a girl in a small school. كانت «Wanda» فتاة في مدرسة صغيرة.
- Wanda was a quiet girl who sat in the back of the classroom. كانت «Wanda» فتاة هادئة تجلس في الخلف في الفصل.
- Wanda always wore the same faded blue dress every day. كانت «Wanda» ترتدي دائماً نفس الفستان الأزرق باهت اللون كل يوم.
- Wanda told everyone she had a hundred beautiful dresses at home. كانت «Wanda» تخبر الجميع أن لديها مائة من الفساتين الجميلة في المنزل.
- Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda every morning. كانت «Peggy» و«Maddie» يضايقون «Wanda» كل صباح.
- In the playground, Peggy made the other girls laugh at Wanda. في ساحة المدرسة، جعلت «Peggy» الفتيات الأخريات يضحكن على «Wanda».
- Maddie didn't like how they were annoying Wanda, but she stayed quiet because she was afraid of losing her friendship with Peggy. لم تكن «Maddie» تحب أنهم يضايقون «Wanda» ولكن ظلت صامتة لأنها كانت تخشى أن تفقد صداقتها مع «Peggy».
- Most of the girls were laughing about Wanda's hundred dresses. كانت معظم الفتيات يسخرن من المائة فستان الخاصة بـ «Wanda».

The Middle

- Miss Mason, the teacher, announced that it was time for the annual drawing competition. أعلنت الأستاذة «Mason» أنه الوقت الخاص بالمسابقة السنوية للرسم.
- Miss Mason would choose one boy and one girl as winners. ستختار الأستاذة «Mason» ولداً واحداً وفتاة واحدة ليكونوا الفائزين.
- When it was time to announce the winners, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful drawings. عندما حان وقت إعلان الفائزين، كان الحائط مغطى بمائة رسمة جميلة.
- Wanda drew and signed the drawings. قامت «Wanda» برسم وتوقيع جميع الرسومات.
- Wanda won the competition, but she wasn't there to receive her medal. فازت «Wanda» بالمسابقة، ولكنها لم تكن هناك لتستلم الميدالية الخاصة بها.

- Wanda was absent for several days, but no one noticed.

- غابت «Wanda» لعدة أيام، ولكن لم يلاحظ أحد.

- Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's dad, saying that Wanda's family moved to the big city.

- قرأت الأستاذة «Mason» خطاباً من والد «Wanda»، قائلاً إن عائلة «Wanda» انتقلت إلى المدينة الكبيرة.

- Wanda's family moved because of unkindness.

- انتقلت عائلة «Wanda» بسبب القسوة.

- Peggy and Maddie felt terrible when they realized that Wanda talked about her drawings not real dresses.

- شعرت «Peggy» و«Maddie» بالأسى عندما أدركوا أن «Wanda» كانت تتحدث عن الرسومات الخاصة بها وليست فساتين حقيقية.

- Peggy and Maddie decided to write to Wanda to apologize.

- قررت «Peggy» و«Maddie» أن يكتبوا إلى «Wanda» ليعتذروا لها.

- Peggy and Maddie wrote to Wanda and told her that her drawings were amazing.

- كتبت «Peggy» و«Maddie» إلى «Wanda» وأخبروها أن رسوماتها رائعة.

- Peggy and Maddie were sorry for their behavior.

- كان «Peggy» و«Maddie» يشعرون بالحزن على تصرفهم.

The End

- Wanda was happy to receive the letter from Peggy and Maddie.

- كانت «Wanda» سعيدة باستلام خطاباً من «Peggy» و«Maddie».

- Wanda wrote back to Peggy and Maddie, saying that she was happy at her new school.

- كتبت «Wanda» خطاباً رداً على «Peggy» و«Maddie» قائلة إنها سعيدة في مدرستها الجديدة.

- Wanda asked Peggy and Maddie to keep her drawings.

- طلبت «Wanda» من «Peggy» و«Maddie» أن يحتفظوا بالرسومات الخاصة بها.

- This experience changed Peggy and Maddie forever.

- هذه التجربة غيرت «Peggy» و«Maddie» للأبد.

- Peggy and Maddie learned that kindness matters more than expensive clothes.

- تعلمت «Peggy» و«Maddie» أن اللطف أكثر قيمة من الملابس الغالية.

- Peggy and Maddie promised to always speak up if there was bullying.

- وعدت «Peggy» و«Maddie» أن يتدخلوا في الحديث دائماً في حال وجود أي تنمر.

1

The beginning

بداية القصة

تحدث Wanda عن فساتينها Wanda talked about her dresses



In a small school, there was a girl named Wanda. She was a **quiet**^[1] girl who sat **in the back**^[2] of the classroom. Wanda always wore the same faded blue **dress**^[3] every day. **Despite**^[4] this, Wanda told everyone she had a **hundred**^[5] beautiful dresses at home, all **lined up**^[6] in her **closet**^[7].

في مدرسة صغيرة، كانت هناك فتاة تُدعى [Wanda]. كانت فتاة هادئة تجلس في آخر الفصل. كانت [Wanda] ترتدي دائماً نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت كل يوم. ومع ذلك، كانت [Wanda] تخبر الجميع أن لديها مائة من الفساتين الجميلة في المنزل، جميعها مصفوفة في خزانة.

[1] هادئ [2] في الخلف [3] فستان [4] على الرغم من [5] مائة [6] يصطف [7] خزانة ملابس

Annoying Wanda in the playground

مضايقة "Wanda" في الملعب



The popular girls at school, especially Peggy and Maddie, **annoyed**^[1] Wanda every morning. One day, while they were in the **playground**^[2], Peggy said, "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!" The other girls laughed. Maddie didn't like how they were annoying Wanda, but she stayed **quiet**^[3]. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's **friendship**^[4]. Soon, most of the girls were annoying Wanda and **laughing**^[5] about her hundred dresses.

كانت الفتيات المحبوبات في المدرسة، وخاصةً [Peggy] و [Maddie] يُزعجن [Wanda] كل صباح. في أحد الأيام، بينما كنّ في الملعب، قالت [Peggy]: "يا [Wanda]، أخبرينا عن فساتينك المائة!" ضحكت الفتيات الأخريات. لم تُعجب [Maddie] بإزعاجهن لـ [Wanda]، لكنها التزمت الصمت. كانت [Maddie] تخشى فقدان صداقة [Peggy]. وسرعان ما أصبحت معظم الفتيات يزعجن [Wanda] ويضحكن على فساتينها المائة.

[5] يضحك

[4] صداقة

[3] هادئ / صامت

[2] ملعب

[1] ضايق / ازعج

Questions & Answers

on the Beginning

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح أعدت خصيصاً لتمكين الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

1. Read and write T [True] or F [False] :

True

1. Wanda was quiet and sat in the back of the classroom.
2. Wanda wore the same faded blue dress every day.
3. The dresses of Wanda were all lined up in her closet.
4. Peggy and the girls laughed at Wanda.
5. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's friendship.

T
T
T
T
T

★ تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

2. Read and write T [True] or F [False] :

False

Correction

1. Wanda was a student at a big school.
2. No one laughed at Wanda and her hundred dresses.
3. Wanda wore a different dress every day.
4. Maddie wanted to lose her friendship with Peggy.
5. Wanda's hundred dresses were in her garden.

F
F
F
F
F

small
The other girls
the same
didn't want
closet

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Answers

1. Wanda is a/an girl at a small school.
a. busy b. angry c. late d. quiet
2. Wanda wore the same blue dress every day.
a. faded b. dark c. colorful d. light
3. Wanda told everyone she had a dresses at home.
a. thousand b. hundred c. ten d. million
4. All Wanda's dresses lined up in the
a. class b. playground c. closet d. bag
5. Peggy and Maddie Wanda in the playground.
a. annoyed b. helped c. read d. drew

d. quiet
a. faded
b. hundred
c. closet
a. annoyed

General Exercises

on the beginning of the story

1 Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Wanda had one hundred dresses.
2. Peggy and Maddie laughed at Wanda.
3. Maddie asked Peggy to stop annoying Wanda.

☐
☐
☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wanda sat in the of the classroom.

a. back b. front c. middle d. beginning

2. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's

a. bags b. toys c. keys d. friendship

3. Wanda wore the same faded dress every day.

a. red b. blue c. green d. orange

4. Most girls at school at Wanda.

a. threw b. laughed c. played d. walked

3 Answer the following questions.

1. **SB** What did Peggy say to Wanda in the playground ?

.....

2. How many dresses did Wanda have ?

.....

4 Who said this ?

- "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!"

.....

5 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

dresses - quiet - annoying - playground - a letter

The popular girls at school, especially Peggy and Maddie, annoyed Wanda every morning. One day, while they were in the [1], Peggy asked Wanda to tell them about her hundred [2] Maddie didn't like how Peggy was [3] Wanda, but she stayed [4]

2

The Middle

منتصف القصة

A drawing competition مسابقة رسم



One day, Miss Mason, the teacher, **announced**^[1] that it was the time for the **annual**^[2] drawing **competition**^[3]. Miss Mason said, "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners." When it was time to announce the winners, to everyone's surprise, the walls were **covered with**^[4] a hundred beautiful **drawings**^[5] of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda drew and signed all the drawings. She won the competition, but she wasn't there to receive her **medal**^[6].

في أحد الأيام، أعلنت المعلمة "Mason" عن موعد مسابقة الرسم السنوية. قائلة: "سأختار ولداً وفتاة ليكونوا الفائزين." وعندما حان وقت إعلان الفائزين، ولدهشة الجميع، غُطيت الجدران بمائة رسمة جميلة لفساتين من جميع الألوان والتصاميم. رسمت "Wanda" جميع الرسومات ووقعت عليها. فازت بالمسابقة، لكنها لم تحضر لتستلم ميداليته.

[1] أعلنت [2] سنوي [3] مسابقة [4] مغطى بـ [5] رسومات [6] ميدالية

•Peggy and Maddie wrote to Wanda to apologize.

كتبت "Peggy" و "Maddie" إلى "Wanda" ليعتذروا.



Wanda was absent for several days, but no one noticed. Miss Mason read a letter^[1] from Wanda's dad, saying that Wanda's family moved^[2] to the big city, where they wouldn't face unkindness^[3].

Peggy and Maddie felt terrible^[4]. They realized that when Wanda talked about her hundred dresses, she meant those drawings, her dreams^[5] on paper. Maddie said to Peggy, "We need to write to Wanda and apologize^[6]."

They wrote her a letter, saying, "Wanda, your drawings are beautiful and amazing. It's very sad that you aren't here to receive your medal. We are sorry for our behavior and hope that you're happy at your new school."

غابت "Wanda" لعدة أيام، لكن لم يلاحظ أحد. قرأت الأستاذة "Mason" خطاب من والد "Wanda"، تفيد بأن عائلة "Wanda" انتقلت إلى المدينة الكبيرة، حيث لن يواجهوا أى قسوة.

شعرت "Peggy" و "Maddie" بالحزن. أدركتا أن "Wanda" عندما تحدثت عن فساتينها المائة، كانت تعني تلك الرسومات - أحلامها المكتوبة على الورق. قالت "Maddie" لـ "Peggy": "علينا أن نكتب إلى "Wanda" ونعتذر.

كتبنا لها خطاب قائلين: يا "Wanda"، رسوماتك جميلة ورائعة. من المحزن جداً أنك لست هنا لاستلام ميداليتك. نأسف لسلوكنا ونأمل أن تكوني سعيدة في مدرستك الجديدة.

[1] خطاب [2] انتقل [3] قسوة [4] بالأسى [5] احلام [6] يعتذر

Questions & Answers

on the middle

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح أعدت خصيصًا لتمكين الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

True

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Miss Mason announced the time of the annual drawing competition. | T |
| 2. Miss Mason would choose one boy and one girl as winners. | T |
| 3. Wanda drew and signed all the drawings on the wall. | T |
| 4. The walls were covered with a hundred beautiful drawings of dresses. | T |
| 5. Wanda won the drawing competition. | T |

★ تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

2. Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

False

Correction

- | | | |
|---|---|----------------|
| 1. Wanda was <u>present</u> at the drawing competition. | F | absent |
| 2. Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's <u>mom</u> . | F | dad |
| 3. Peggy and Maddie wrote a <u>text message</u> to Wanda. | F | letter |
| 4. Wanda <u>received</u> her medal. | F | didn't receive |
| 5. Wanda's family moved to the <u>small</u> city. | F | big |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Answers

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. Peggy and Maddie wrote a to Wanda to apologize.
a. behavior b. letter c. dream d. closet | b. letter |
| 2. Wanda was for several days and no one noticed.
a. happy b. sad c. absent d. dear | c. absent |
| 3. Peggy and Maddie hoped Wanda was at her new school.
a. busy b. lazy c. terrible d. happy | d. happy |
| 4. The were covered with a hundred beautiful drawings.
a. walls b. classes c. playgrounds d. chairs | a. walls |
| 5. Wanda the drawing competition.
a. lost b. won c. saw d. read | b. won |

General Exercises

on the Middle of the story

1 Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Miss Mason announced the monthly drawing competition.
2. **SB** Wanda's family moved to the big city.
3. Peggy and Maddie were always kind to Wanda.

☐
☐
☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wanda's sent a letter to Miss Mason.
a. mom b. dad c. sister d. neighbor
2. Peggy and Maddie wrote a/an to Wanda.
a. email b. letter c. text message d. report
3. **SB** Miss Mason will choose one boy and one girl as in the competition.
a. losers b. players c. winners d. students
4. **SB** Wanda drew and all the drawings in the competition.
a. moved b. sang c. spoke d. signed

3 Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Wanda's family move to the big city ?
.....

2. **SB** How did Peggy and Maddie feel after seeing Wanda's drawings ?
.....

4 Who said this ?

- "We need to write to Wanda and apologize."
.....

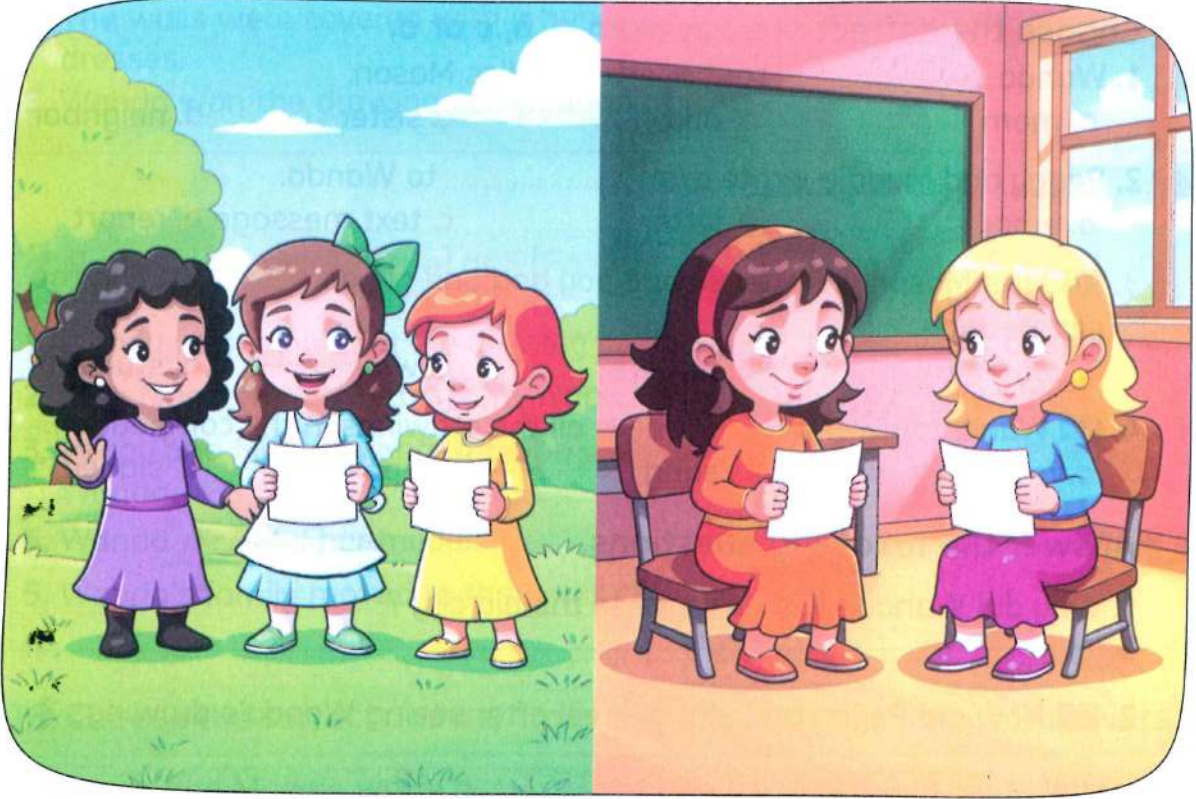
5 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

surprise - medal - competition - announce - drawings

Miss Mason announced that it was time for the annual drawing competition. When it was time to [1] the winner, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful [2] of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda won the [3], but she wasn't there to receive her [4]

The experience changed Peggy and Maddie forever.

التجربة غيرت «Maddie» و«Peggy» للأبد.



Wanda **received**^[1] the letter at her new school. She was happy when she learned that the letter was from Maddie and Peggy. Then, Wanda wrote back to them, saying, "Thank you for your letter. I'm happy at my new school, and I want you to **keep**^[2] my drawings".

This **experience**^[3] changed Peggy and Maddie forever. They learned that **kindness**^[4] matters more than **expensive**^[5] clothes. They **promised**^[6] to always speak up if there was **bullying**^[7].

استلمت «Wanda» الخطاب في مدرستها الجديدة. فكانت سعيدة عندما علمت أن الخطاب من «Maddie» و«Peggy». ثم كتبت «Wanda» خطاباً ردّاً عليهم قائلة: «شكراً لكما على خطابكما». أنا سعيدة في مدرستي الجديدة و أريدكما أن تحتفظا برسوماتي.

هذه التجربة غيرت «Peggy» و«Maddie» للأبد. لقد تعلموا أن الأشياء الطيبة تبدو أكثر قيمة من الملابس غالية الثمن. لقد وعدوا بالتدخل في الحديث دائماً عندما يكون هناك أي تنمر.

[1] استلم [2] يحتفظ [3] تجربة [4] لطف [5] غال الثمن [6] وعد [7] التنمر

Questions & Answers

on the End

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح أعدت خصيصًا لتمكين الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

1. Read and write T [True] or F [False] :

True

1. Peggy and Maddie promised to always speak up if there was bullying.
2. Wanda received a letter at her new school from Peggy and Maddie.
3. Wanda asked Peggy and Maddie to keep her drawings.
4. Wanda is happy at her new school.
5. Peggy and Maddie changed and became kind.

T

T

T

T

T

تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط. ★

2. Read and write T [True] or F [False] :

False Correction

1. Peggy and Maddie wrote an email to Wanda.
2. Wanda wrote back to Miss Mason.
3. Wanda asked Peggy and Maddie to sell her drawings.
4. Wanda was sad when she received Peggy and Maddie's letter.
5. Wanda didn't write back to her friend's letter.

F

F

F

F

F

a letter

Peggy and Maddie

keep

happy

wrote

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Answers

1. Wanda received a from Peggy and Maddie.
a. present b. medal c. letter d. book
2. Wanda Peggy and Maddie for writing a letter to her.
a. thanked b. bullied c. threw d. saw
3. The experience Peggy and Maddie forever.
a. harmed b. forgot c. asked d. changed
4. Peggy and Maddie knew that kindness matters more than clothes.
a. old b. expensive c. dirty d. clean

c. letter

a. thanked

d. changed

b. expensive

General Exercises

on the end of the story

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Wanda received Peggy and Maddie's letter.
2. Wanda was angry with Peggy's letter.
3. Peggy and Maddie didn't change their behavior.
4. Peggy and Maddie became kind at the end.

☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Peggy and Maddie promised to speak up if there was
a. bullying b. competition c. clothes d. dresses
2. is more important than expensive clothes.
a. Annoying b. Bullying c. Sadness d. Kindness
3. Wanda is at her new school.
a. angry b. happy c. annoyed d. sad
4. Wanda wrote back to
a. Miss Mason b. her dad
c. Peggy and Maddie d. her mom

3 Answer the following questions.

1. **SB** What did Wanda write in her letter to Peggy and Maddie ?

.....

2. How did this experience affect Peggy and Maddie ?

.....

4 Who said this ?

- "I want you to keep my drawings".

.....

5 Read and complete with the words from the box.

back - drawings - letter - Peggy - promised

Wanda received the letter at her new school. She was happy when she learned that the [1] was from Maddie and [2] Then, Wanda wrote [3] to them, saying, "Thank you for your letter. I'm happy at my new school, and I want you to keep my [4]"

General Exercises

on the story

1 Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Peggy was always kind to Wanda.
2. Wanda was in the school and got her medal.
3. Wanda's family moved to the big city to find better jobs.
4. Miss Mason chose three girls as winners.
5. We shouldn't judge others by their appearance.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's
a. toys b. address c. friendship d. keys
2. Maddie and Peggy sent a letter to to Wanda.
a. wait b. apologize c. look d. ask
3. Wanda won the competition.
a. drawing b. sports c. reading d. writing
4. When Peggy Wanda, Maddie stayed quiet.
a. thanked b. bullied c. covered d. helped

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What did Wanda always wear ?
.....
2. What did Wanda tell everyone she had at home ?
.....
3. Who annoyed Wanda every morning ?
.....
4. Why did Maddie stay quiet ?
.....
5. What competition did Miss Mason announce ?
.....
6. Who drew all the beautiful dresses ?
.....
7. Why wasn't Wanda there to get her medal ?
.....

8. Why did Wanda's family move to the big city ?

9. What did Maddie and Peggy decide to do for Wanda ?

10. How did Wanda feel when she got the letter ?

11. What did Peggy and Maddie learn from their experience ?

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

dress – classroom – closet – beautiful – wrong

In a small school, there was a girl named Wanda. She was a girl who sat in the back of the [1] Wanda always wore the same faded blue [2] every day. Despite this, Wanda told everyone she had a hundred [3] dresses at home, all lined up in her [4]

5 SB Complete the events using the box.

to apologize – annoyed Wanda – they moved to the big city

1. One day in the playground, Peggy and other girls
2. The teacher read the letter from Wanda's dad and said
3. Peggy and Maddie wrote a letter to Wanda

6 Who said this ?

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1. "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners." | [.....] |
| 2. "We need to write to Wanda and apologize." | [.....] |
| 3. "Thank you for your letter." | [.....] |
| 4. "We are sorry for our behavior." | [.....] |
| 5. "Your drawings are beautiful and amazing." | [.....] |
| 6. "I'm happy at my new school." | [.....] |

7 SB Read and put the events in order.

- Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda in the playground.
- Wanda won the drawing competition.
- Peggy and Maddie promised to always speak up if there was bullying.
- Wanda told everyone about her one hundred dresses.
- Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's dad.
- Peggy and Maddie wrote a letter to Wanda.

Review 2

on Units 4, 5 & 6

التقييمات اليومية
والاسبوعية والشهرية
في نهاية الكتاب

I

Vocabulary

Unit 4

bazaar	بازار [سوق تجارى]	store	متجر	treasures	كنوز
oasis	واحة	borrow	يستعير	history	تاريخ
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	shopping mall	مركز تجارى	colorful	ملون
gifts	هدايا	adventure	مغامرة	warm clothes	ملابس ثقيلة
post office	مكتب بريد	popular	شعبى - محبوب	monastery	دير
packages	طرود بريدية	Nile River	نهر النيل	museum	متحف
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	library	مكتبة	nature	الطبيعة

Unit 5

uniform	زى موحد	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	regret	يندم / الندم
patients	مرضى	nurse	ممرضة	promise	يوعد
check	يفحص / يختبر	engineer	مهندس	hero	بطل
costume	زى تنكرى	design	يصمم	carpenter	نجار
mentor	مرشد تعليمي	skilled	بارع - ماهر	equipment	معدات
brave	شجاع	fit	مناسب - ملائم	danger	خطر
photographer	مصور	furniture	أثاث	alarm	إنذار

Unit 6 Story

Word	Meaning	Definition
faded	باهت	light in color because it is old or used
popular	مشهور / معروف	known by many people
annoying	مزعج	making you feel unhappy or a little angry
absent	غائب	not in a place
notice	يلاحظ	to see or hear something
behavior	سلوك	the way someone acts
expensive	غالي الثمن	costs a lot of money
bullying	تنمر	hurting or scaring other people
apologize	يعتذر	to say "I'm sorry" when you do something wrong

II

Language in use

Unit 4

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

- We use prepositions of place to show where things are :

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتوضيح أماكن الأشياء.



behind خلف



in front of أمام



on على



in في



between بين



next to بجانب

Unit 5

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

Adjective الصفة

Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

Superlative تفضيل

في حالة المقارنة بين أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين [تفضيل]
نضيف للصفة القصيرة [est]
ونضع قبلها [the]

Example مثال

- This tree is **the tallest** tree in the park.

ملاحظات هامة

- يضاف [st] للصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [e] مثل: nice → the nicest
- يضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة [est] في الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف ساكن و قبلها حرف متحرك مثل: big → the biggest
- تحويل [y] لـ [i] ونضيف [est] في الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بـ [y] و قبلها حرف ساكن مثل: healthy → the healthiest

El Moasser

Homework Interactive



El-Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي

Part One

El-Moasser Assessments

1. Daily Assessments

١. التقييمات اليومية

2. Weekly Assessments

٢. التقييمات الأسبوعية

3. Monthly Assessments

٣. التقييمات الشهرية



Part Two

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

PART 1

1. Daily Assessments

Unit 1: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I use my tongue to (Lesson 1)
 - a. see
 - b. touch
 - c. taste
 - d. smell
- A healthy I follow is getting enough sleep at night. (Lesson 2)
 - a. sense
 - b. habit
 - c. mind
 - d. food
- To means to give some of what you have to others. (Lesson 3)
 - a. share
 - b. smell
 - c. study
 - d. hear
- Sleeping early me healthy. (Lesson 4)
 - a. needs
 - b. uses
 - c. does
 - d. keeps
- Share your poster presentation the class. (Lesson 5)
 - a. with
 - b. for
 - c. of
 - d. on

Unit 2: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We flowers and trees in our garden. (Lesson 1)
 - a. design
 - b. plant
 - c. help
 - d. volunteer
- Let's discuss to solve these problems. (Lesson 2)
 - a. trash
 - b. routines
 - c. solutions
 - d. sounds
- Egyptians are of their culture. (Lesson 3)
 - a. proud
 - b. sad
 - c. famous
 - d. kind
- Dad saw the old school that still today. (Lesson 4)
 - a. understands
 - b. stands
 - c. sits
 - d. puts
- a poster about ways to solve a community problem. (Lesson 5)
 - a. Do
 - b. Make
 - c. Cycle
 - d. Walk

Unit 3: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The has a long tail and climbs trees. (Lesson 1)
 - a. giraffe
 - b. monkey
 - c. zebra
 - d. elephant
- Animals need our help to stay healthy and (Lesson 2)
 - a. dangerous
 - b. dirty
 - c. safe
 - d. old

PART 2

Dictation on Lessons

Unit 1

[A]	[B]
لسان	مذاق
تongue	Fire
amazing	butterflies

Unit 2

[A]	[B]
وقت	عادات
break time	sharp
sweets	energy

Unit 3

[A]	[B]
مأكولات	مطعم
soup	jingling
a deep breath	coins

Units 4 & 5

[A]	[B]
مذاق طعام	روتينا
get dressed	daily routine
study	life

1. Daily Assessments

١. التقييمات اليومية

Unit 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I use my tongue to [Lesson 1]
a. see b. touch c. taste d. smell
- A healthy I follow is getting enough sleep at night. [Lesson 2]
a. sense b. habit c. mind d. food
- To means to give some of what you have to others. [Lesson 3]
a. share b. smell c. study d. hear
- Sleeping early me healthy. [Lesson 4]
a. needs b. uses c. does d. keeps
- Share your poster presentation the class. [Lesson 5]
a. with b. for c. of d. on

Unit 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We flowers and trees in our garden. [Lesson 1]
a. design b. plant c. help d. volunteer
- Let's discuss to solve these problems. [Lesson 2]
a. trash b. routines c. solutions d. sounds
- Egyptians are of their culture. [Lesson 3]
a. proud b. sad c. famous d. kind
- Dad saw the old school that still today. [Lesson 4]
a. understands b. stands c. sits d. puts
- a poster about ways to solve a community problem. [Lesson 5]
a. Do b. Make c. Cycle d. Walk

Unit 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The has a long tail and climbs trees. [Lesson 1]
a. giraffe b. monkey c. zebra d. elephant
- Animals need our help to stay healthy and [Lesson 2]
a. dangerous b. dirty c. safe d. old

3. A/An is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live. [Lesson 3]
 a. entrance b. footprint c. cave d. moral
4. The Red Sea Dugong eats sea [Lesson 4]
 a. nets b. grass c. areas d. footprints
5. The children made a of endangered animals. [Lesson 5]
 a. drum b. collage c. fruit d. ball

Unit 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People used giant stones to build the [Lesson 1]
 a. towers b. pyramids c. bazaars d. oases
2. We go to the to borrow books. [Lesson 2]
 a. hospital b. post office c. library d. shops
3. The ducks swim in the [Lesson 3]
 a. bin b. pan c. pond d. peak
4. We wear clothes in winter. [Lesson 4]
 a. warm b. hot c. light d. thin
5. A/An is a photo or a drawing. [Lesson 5]
 a. lake b. image c. oasis d. desert

Unit 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An designs new buildings. [Lesson 1]
 a. doctor b. firefighter c. engineer d. nurse
2. Amr is a/an He needs a good camera to take great photos. [Lesson 2]
 a. mentor b. actor c. photographer d. nurse
3. means to be the right size. [Lesson 3]
 a. Skilled b. Strong c. Fit d. Careful
4. A firefighter uses special tools like water [Lesson 4]
 a. helmets b. hoses c. ladders d. alarms
5. is the Japanese art of paper folding. [Lesson 5]
 a. Origami b. Gate c. Flute d. Gif

2. Weekly Assessments

٢. التقييمات الأسبوعية

Weeks 1&2 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 1**
- We use our hands to
a. see b. touch c. smell d. hear
 - In the afternoon, Sarah her homework first.
a. has b. does c. makes d. brushes

- Week 2**
- The are people and animals in a story.
a. coins b. settings c. characters d. owners
 - I eat a healthy between meals.
a. snake b. snack c. breakfast d. plane

Weeks 3&4 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 3**
- We to help at the community park.
a. collect b. volunteer c. plant d. feed
 - Throwing trash on the ground makes the streets
a. clean b. dirty c. great d. wonderful

- Week 4**
- People in Upper Egypt the sugar cane harvest.
a. sing b. wear c. celebrate d. weave
 - We should walk or to school to stop air pollution.
a. recycle b. cycle c. move d. use

Weeks 5&6 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 5**
- The zebra has a coat.
a. spotted b. striped c. yellow d. gray
 - Giraffes need tall to reach their food.
a. rivers b. challenges c. trees d. owners

- Week 6**
- To "....." means to look for and catch animals for food.
a. laugh b. pretend c. hunt d. exercise
 - To help endangered animals, stop
a. habitats b. pollution c. water d. hoses

Weeks 7&8 ▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Week 7**
- I trash from the garden.
a. help b. collect c. play d. plant
 - The is black and white. It has a striped coat.
a. monkey b. zebra c. elephant d. lion

- Week 8**
- Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar is a busy
a. oasis b. museum c. market d. gift
 - The has many stores and restaurants.
a. school b. shopping mall c. library d. post office

Weeks 9&10 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Week 9

1. The flies at night.
a. pond b. bat c. bin d. pan
2. Wooden means made of
a. wood b. glass c. paper d. cotton

Week 10

1. A/An helps sick people feel better.
a. engineer b. doctor c. firefighter d. police officer
2. Adam is a/an He helps young students learn and grow.
a. actor b. mentor c. carpenter d. firefighter

Weeks 11&12 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Week 11

1. "....." means very good at doing something.
a. Fit b. Skilled c. Wooden d. Poor
2. A firefighter helps people in
a. hero b. difference c. danger d. uniform

Week 12

1. Peggy and Maddie wrote a to Wanda to apologize.
a. behavior b. letter c. dream d. closet
2. Wanda always wore the same faded blue every day.
a. dress b. closet c. letter d. drawing

Weeks 13&14 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Week 13

1. Miss Mason will choose one boy and one girl as in the competition.
a. trees b. winners c. footprints d. leaves
2. Wanda drew and all the drawings in the competition.
a. moved b. sang c. spoke d. signed

Week 14

1. The Egyptian has many treasures.
a. Museum b. Tower c. Mall d. Office
2. The Cairo is tall and we can see Cairo from the top.
a. Oasis b. Tower c. Bazaar d. River

Weeks 15&16 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Week 15

1. A/An works in a school and teaches lessons.
a. engineer b. nurse c. teacher d. firefighter
2. The River is a very long river in Egypt.
a. Pyramid b. Nile c. Tower d. Bazaar

Week 16

1. A/An saves people from fires.
a. police officer b. firefighter
c. engineer d. photographer
2. Siwa has lots of trees and water.
a. Tower b. Lake c. Pyramid d. Oasis

3. Monthly Assessments

٣. التقييمات الشهرية

October Month تقييمات شهر أكتوبر

Model A

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I delicious food with my tongue.
a. smell b. taste c. make d. hear
2. "....." means always wanting more than what is needed.
a. Hungry b. Angry c. Greedy d. Great
3. We clothes and give them to people who need them.
a. collect b. feed c. plant d. help
4. Forest officers work hard to animals and their homes.
a. throw b. protect c. avoid d. check
5. Everyone uses trash in my community.
a. pins b. pens c. bins d. pans

Model B

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What Yasser says is It doesn't make sense.
a. illogical b. appear c. dishonest d. dislike
2. The uses its trunk to spray water on its body.
a. monkey b. elephant c. giraffe d. bear
3. Our help us understand the world around us.
a. butterflies b. senses c. trash d. traffic
4. The is the time and place of a story.
a. meal b. character c. setting d. jingling
5. I feel so happy when I the cats and dogs their food.
a. give b. touch c. taste d. smell

Model A

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I go to Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar to buy some
a. trees b. pyramids c. gifts d. tourists
2. A/An wears a blue uniform in the hospitals.
a. nurse b. firefighter c. engineer d. mentor
3. can sail on the Nile River.
a. Trains b. Cars c. Boats d. Buses
4. If you to do something, you should do it.
a. design b. promise c. build d. fix
5. An engineer designs
a. pictures b. birds c. buildings d. fires

Model B

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Egyptian Museum has many to see.
a. gifts b. treasures c. pyramids d. camels
2. A wildlife takes pictures of wild animals.
a. engineer b. photographer c. doctor d. mentor
3. Near the, tourists can ride on camels.
a. museums b. Pyramids c. bazaars d. towers
4. When the rings, a firefighter quickly puts on his equipment.
a. tank b. alarm c. hose d. ladder
5. Tourists many pictures at the Pyramids.
a. make b. take c. send d. cut

PART 2

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Unit 1

Lesson 1	
[A]	[B]
..... يتذوق	 حواس
..... يشم	 يفهم
tongue	fire
amazing	butterflies

Lesson 2	
[A]	[B]
..... عادات	 يغسل أسنانه
..... يستحم	 يستيقظ مبكراً
break time	sharp
sweets	energy

Lesson 3	
[A]	[B]
..... مالك	 طماع
..... يشارك / يتشارك	 مطعم
soup	jingling
a deep breath	coins

Lessons 4 & 5	
[A]	[B]
..... عادات طعام صحية	 يبقى قوياً
..... وجبة خفيفة	 وجبة الإفطار
get dressed	daily routine
study	life

Unit 2

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lesson 1

[A]	[B]
..... يجمع	 يتطوع
..... مجتمع	 جيران
clean	plant
clothes	trash

Lesson 2

[A]	[B]
..... حركة المرور	 مشكلات
..... سلة مهملات	 غير نظيف / متسخ
solutions	on the ground
move	instead
throw	quickly

Lesson 3

[A]	[B]
..... الوجه القبلي	 تقليدي
..... حرف يدوية	 أحداث
decorations	traditional
proud	weave

Lessons 4 & 5

[A]	[B]
..... غنى	 مازال قائماً
..... محطة قطار	 أكشاك
neighborhood	history
wooden	rich

Unit 3

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lesson 1			
[A]		[B]	
.....	زرافة	.....	فيل
.....	منقط	.....	حارس الغابة
zebra	.....	bear	.....
striped	.....	trunk	.....

Lesson 2			
[A]		[B]	
.....	تحديات / صعوبات	.....	الحيوانات البرية
.....	مساحات	.....	قفص
forest officer	.....	owners	.....
attention	.....	vets	.....

Lesson 3			
[A]		[B]	
.....	آثار الأقدام	.....	يصطاد
.....	كهف	.....	ثعلب
a fluffy tail	.....	wise	.....
pretend	.....	entrance	.....

Lessons 4 & 5			
[A]		[B]	
.....	الفهد العربي	.....	مهدد بالانقراض
.....	خطر	.....	حيوانات بحرية
species	.....	sea grass	.....
fishing nets	.....	disappearing	.....

Unit 4

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lesson 1	
[A]	[B]
.....	مرشد سياحي
.....	هدايا
Siwa Oasis	Cairo Tower
giant stones	busy market

Lesson 2	
[A]	[B]
.....	مكتب بريد
.....	متاجر
library	hospital
connected	borrow

Lesson 3	
[A]	[B]
.....	خفاش
.....	منقار
bin	pond
pat	pin

Lessons 4 & 5	
[A]	[B]
.....	دير
.....	مغامرة
nature	sunset
salt lake	historical places

Unit 5

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Lesson 1			
[A]		[B]	
.....	يفحص	.....	معلم
.....	ممرضة	.....	زى تنكرى
design	.....	wear	.....
patients	.....	firefighter	.....

Lesson 2			
[A]		[B]	
.....	شجاع	.....	ضحكات
.....	شخصية	.....	خجول
mentor	.....	puppet	.....
voice-over actor	.....	wildlife photographer	.....

Lesson 3			
[A]		[B]	
.....	خشبي	.....	ماهر
.....	يناسب	.....	يوعد
carpenter	.....	furniture	.....
regret	.....	hammer	.....

Lessons 4 & 5			
[A]		[B]	
.....	إنذار	.....	بطل
.....	خراطيم المياه	.....	يقاتل / يصارع
equipment	.....	danger	.....
protective	.....	ladder	.....

Unit 6

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model [A]			
.....	أحلام	.....	صداقة
.....	فائز	.....	يضحك
.....	خطاب	.....	خبره
annoying	.....	notice	.....
absent	.....	behavior	.....
bullying	.....	expensive	.....

Model [B]			
.....	مفاجأة	.....	هادئ
.....	باهت	.....	سنوي
.....	قسوة	.....	يعتذر
dress	.....	closet	.....
playground	.....	competition	.....
drawings	.....	announce	.....

Word	meaning	Definition
.....	باهت	light in color because it is old or used
popular	.....	.....
.....	مزعج	making you feel unhappy or a little angry
.....	غائب	.....
notice	.....	to see or hear something
.....	سلوك	the way someone acts
expensive	.....	.....
.....	تنمر	hurting or scaring other people
apologize	.....	to say "I'm sorry" when you do something wrong



Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع
الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Unit 1

General Exercises on Lesson 1

Today, we learned about our senses at school. Ms. Mona is our science teacher. We will learn about amazing senses today. Senses help us understand the world around us. Our senses are like sight, hearing and smell.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

Mazen is a 10-year-old boy. He lives in Cairo. He is a healthy boy. He follows healthy habits. He gets enough sleep at night. He also eats healthy food every day. At the park, he does some exercises every morning.

Lesson 3

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

[3] Listen and write the missing letters.

1. plate 2. pot 3. home 4. hat

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

Noha is fit and healthy. She has many healthy habits which help her stay strong. She wakes up very early and washes her face. She has a healthy breakfast with her family.

General Exercises on Unit 1

One day, Goha was hungry, but he didn't have enough money. He smelled delicious soup. He sat outside the restaurant.

He is enjoying the smell of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his coins. The owner laughed and invited him in to share the soup.



Unit 2

General Exercises on Lesson 1

We go to the park to help on weekends. We plant flowers and trees there. We collect trash from the park to keep it clean. We feed the birds. It's really fun to volunteer and make the park nice for everyone.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

Trash is a big problem in my community. The streets look dirty. My neighbor, Ashraf, thinks we can solve this problem if we work together. We can put new bins everywhere to put trash in them. Everyone uses them now. Our street is very clean now.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

• Listen and write the missing letters.

1. forest 2. vest 3. flag 4. violin

General Exercises on Unit 2

Egypt has two special regions: the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its traditions and culture. Even though the two places have some differences, they share many of the same traditions. Egyptians are proud of their culture.



Unit 3

General Exercises on Lesson 1

Bears are wild animals. They are big and strong animals. They have thick fur and sharp claws, so they are dangerous. Bears can catch fish. A baby bear is called a cub.

traditions and culture. The houses in Nubia are painted in bright colors and have special designs. People there make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand.

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

«A diary entry about your community's history»

June 16, 2025

Dear diary,

Today, my grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, our neighborhood was very different. The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Grandpa showed me old photos. I saw the old school that still stands today. I feel proud about my community's history. Yours truly,

✍️ Soha

General Exercises on Unit 2

«How to stop air Pollution»

Air pollution is bad for everyone. It happens when bad things go into the air. Cars and factories make the air dirty. To stop air pollution, we can walk or cycle to school. We should use less plastic. We should plant trees in our community.

Unit 3

General Exercises on Lesson 1

«Your favorite animal»

My favorite animal is the giraffe. It's tall and has a long neck. It eats leaves from trees up high. It has a spotted coat.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

«Taking care of animals»

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Zoo animals need special

attention. Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Pets need daily care from their owners. When we care for animals, we create a safe place for them.

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

«Endangered animals»

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Leopard is in danger because people build houses in their habitats. The Red Sea Dugong is also an endangered animal in Egypt. It's in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

General Exercises on Unit 3

"A forest animal"

There are many animals at the forest park. We can see elephants, monkeys, lions and giraffes. The elephant is big and gray. The monkey is small and often has a long tail. The lion has yellow fur and often hunts at night. The giraffe is tall and has a long neck.

Unit 4

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Amazing places in Egypt"

Egypt has amazing places to visit. The Pyramids of Giza are very nice. Tourists take many pictures at the Pyramids. We can also visit the Egyptian Museum. It has many treasures to see, and history too. We can go to Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar to buy some gifts.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

«Places you go in your city»

My city has many important places that help people every day. My favorite place is the school. It is important because students go there to learn and meet friends. Another important place is the hospital. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better. From the shopping mall, we can buy things and eat there. At the museum, we can learn about history.

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

«A visit to St. Catherine Mountain»

By Tarek

March 15, 2024

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature and adventure.

General Exercises on Unit 4

«Schools»

Schools are places where students go to learn. In school, students study subjects like math, English and Arabic. Teachers help students and the library has many books to read or borrow. Schools help children grow smart, kind, and strong.

Unit 5

General Exercises on Lesson 1

«What do you want to be when you grow up?»

When I grow up, I want to be a doctor. I like helping people. Doctors help patients. They check their health.

They give sick people the right medicine to get better. Doctors wear a white coat. They work in hospitals.

«General Exercises on Lesson 2

«Amazing jobs»

There are a lot of jobs in our community. Some of these jobs are amazing and different. Being a wildlife photographer is very interesting. The wildlife photographers take pictures of wild animals. They wait a long time to get the best picture. A voice-over actor is another exciting job! The voice-over actors make voices for cartoons.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

«A carpenter»

Carpenters work with wood. They are very skilled. They make beautiful furniture. They make wooden chairs and tables. Carpenters use nails and hammer to fix doors and windows. They are very important in our community.

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

«Firefighters»

Firefighters work at fire station. They wear a thick protective uniform with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep them safe. They save lives and protect the community. Their work is dangerous, but they are heroes.

General Exercises on Unit 5

«Amazing Jobs»

There are many jobs in our community. Every job is important because it helps the community. Doctors help sick people and check their health. Engineers design new buildings. Nurses help the doctor and care for the patients. Firefighters stop fires and save people.

Interactive Notebook

الفصل الدراسي الأول

الصف الرابع الابتدائي

English

كراسة المعاصر: تفاعلية و المهارات اللغوية
تصرف مجاناً مع الكتاب



FIRST TERM

4th
Primary
2026

► PART ONE

Master Your Skills

Reading Skill 4

Writing Skill 10

► PART TWO

A Week Is Enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

Days 1&2 Vocabulary & Language 24

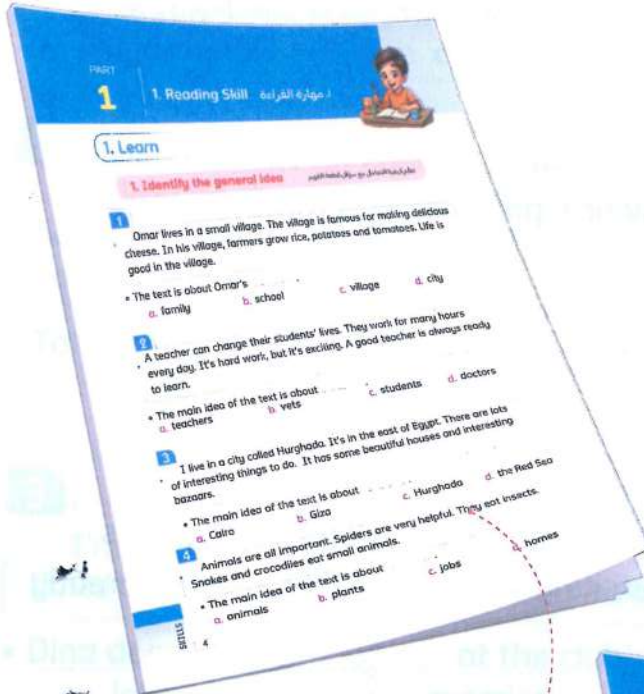
Days 3&4 The Story & Writing Skill 32

Days 5,6&7 Sample Tests 37



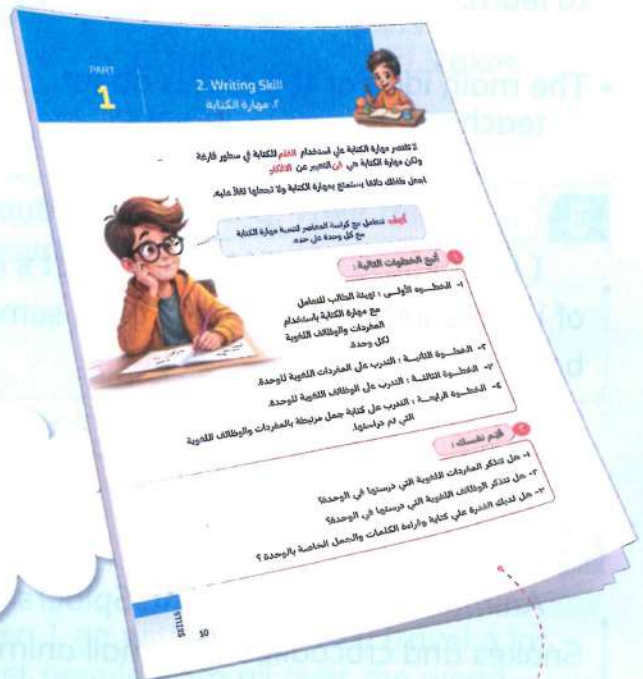
Master Your Skills

Part one



Reading Skill

كيفية التعامل مع مهارة القراءة



Writing Skill

كيفية التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة.



1. Learn

1. Identify the general idea

تعلم كيفية التعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

1

Omar lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. In his village, farmers grow rice, potatoes and tomatoes. Life is good in the village.

- The text is about Omar's

a. family

b. school

c. village

d. city

2

A teacher can change their students' lives. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

- The main idea of the text is about

a. teachers

b. vets

c. students

d. doctors

3

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt. There are lots of interesting things to do. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

- The main idea of the text is about

a. Cairo

b. Giza

c. Hurghada

d. the Red Sea

4

Animals are all important. Spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Snakes and crocodiles eat small animals.

- The main idea of the text is about

a. animals

b. plants

c. jobs

d. homes

2. Demonstrate understanding of specific details

1

I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help students find the information they need.

- I work in a school
a. playground b. classroom c. hall d. library

2

Talia lives in a big house. She can relax and do her homework in her bedroom. Talia's mom likes the living room with the balcony where she can see the whole street.

- Talia can do her homework in the
a. kitchen b. bedroom c. bathroom d. hall

3

I'm Dina. I'm healthy. I do a lot of exercise at the club. I practice tennis four times a week. I don't like cola. It is unhealthy. I don't eat candy, but I like fruits.

- Dina does a lot of at the club.
a. jobs b. exercise c. food d. cakes

4

Camels are amazing. They are beautiful and strong. Their milk is delicious. They are perfect for the desert.

- Camels' is delicious.
a. water b. milk c. juice d. fur

3. Determine the meaning of words and phrases

1

My parents work on tourist boats so I go with them. They travel a lot. I see many interesting places. I meet people from all over the world.

- The underlined word "interesting" means
a. bad b. fresh c. wonderful d. hot

2

The fox lives in the desert. It loses heat from its ears during the day. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm at night.

- The underlined word "thick" means
 a. small b. short c. heavy d. bad

3

I'm Mona. I'm healthy. I like fruits. My favorite fruits are grapes and bananas. My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake.

- The underlined word "awesome" means
 a. bad b. late c. unhealthy d. wonderful

4

I'm a farmer. I look after the trees and I give them water. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.

- The underlined word "sell" is the opposite of
 a. by b. buy c. try d. cry

4. Describe the relationship between two people, events or ideas

1

I want to be a bus driver. For me, it's the best job in the world. A bus driver helps us every day. He takes us to school.

- How does the bus driver help us?

2

Mona works at the supermarket near my house. We see her every week when we buy food. She helps us when we can't find something.

- How can Mona help you at the supermarket?

3

A bird and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big fish. The bear has claws. The bird has a beak. The bear is stronger than the bird.

- Who is stronger, the bear or the bird?

5. Make logical inferences from the text

1

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

- Why do teachers need to think quickly?

2

Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand. They can live without water for a long time. They have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop sand from coming in.

- Why do you think camels are perfect for the desert? Mention one reason.

6. Summarize the key supporting details and ideas

1

I'm a tour guide. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

2

There are a lot of places in my city. I go to the supermarket to buy food. I go to school to learn. When we are sick, we go to the hospital.

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

3

Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

4

I'm Adam, I'm healthy. I like sports. My favorite sport is basketball. I don't drink cola because it's unhealthy. I drink milk. It's healthy.

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

2. Parctice

٢. نماذج على قطع فهم للتدريب

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

It's Thursday morning. Manal is going to meet her friends Soha and Alaa at the zoo. She doesn't know the way to the zoo so she gets a map from her mother. Manal walks to the bus stop and rides the bus to the zoo. It takes forty minutes to go there. Soha and Alaa are waiting for her in front of the zoo gate. They are excited when they see the animals like the lion, monkey, elephant and giraffe.

A. Answer the following questions.

1. How does Manal get to the zoo ?
2. Why are Manal and her friends excited?
3. Who does Manal get a map from?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Manal is going to meet her friends on
a. Saturday b. Thursday c. Monday d. Sunday
5. The bus takes minutes to get to the zoo.
a. 14 b. 44 c. 40 d. 41

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin. Think about where you are now. What can you see? What can you hear? Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We use our senses every day to help us the world.
a. stand b. understand c. read d. play
2. We can feel with our
a. skin b. tongue c. nose d. ears

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do we use our eyes for?
4. How can we smell?

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Ali. I'm eleven years old. I live in Aswan. My favorite hobby is wildlife photography. Wildlife photography is when you take pictures of animals, birds and plants in nature. There are lots of wonderful animals in Egypt. I really love taking photos of them and learn about them. I have about 200 wildlife photos. My favorite animals are giraffes. They are tall. They have long necks. They eat leaves from trees up high.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The is Ali's favorite animal.

- a. camel b. zebra c. giraffe d. lion

2. Ali has about wildlife photos.

- a. 10 b. 20 c. 200 d. 500

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How old is Ali?

4. Where does Ali live ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Ali. I help new students to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around and I stay with them at the break. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ahmed. He was very nervous and shy. I shared my book with him and I gave him extra copies of the worksheets. I love helping my friends. Next Friday, we will go to Giza together and visit the Pyramids there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about "....."

- a. Helping new students b. Football
c. Studying d. Teachers at school

2. Ahmed was shy and

- a. happy b. nervous c. strong d. organized

3. Ali is

- a. helpful b. frightened c. messy d. nervous

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What did Ali share with Ahmed?

5. What will they visit in Giza?

2. Writing Skill

٢. مهارة الكتابة



لا تقتصر مهارة الكتابة علي استخدام **القلم** للكتابة في سطور فارغة
ولكن مهارة الكتابة هي **فن** التعبير عن **الافكار**.
اجعل طفلك دائماً يستمتع بمهارة الكتابة ولا تجعلها ثقلًا عليه.

كيف تتعامل مع كراسة المعاصر لتنمية مهارة الكتابة
مع كل وحدة على حده.

١ أتبع الخطوات التالية :

١- الخطوة الأولى : تهيئة الطالب للتعامل
مع مهارة الكتابة باستخدام
المفردات والوظائف اللغوية
لكل وحدة.

٢- الخطوة الثانية : التدرب على المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.

٣- الخطوة الثالثة : التدرب على الوظائف اللغوية للوحدة.

٤- الخطوة الرابعة : التدرب على كتابة جمل مرتبطة بالمفردات والوظائف اللغوية
التي تم دراستها.

٢ قيم نفسك :

١- هل تتذكر المفردات اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة؟

٢- هل تتذكر الوظائف اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة؟

٣- هل لديك القدرة علي كتابة وقراءة الكلمات والجمل الخاصة بالوحدة ؟

1. How to make a sentence



• جزء يلعب لدى الطالب مهارة استخدام الكلمات وترتيبها لتكوين جملة صحيحة.

1 Parts of speech or types of words

أ. أجزاء الكلام أو أنواع الكلمات.

تنقسم الكلمات إلى عدة أنواع يتعرف التلميذ في هذا الجزء على بعض منها.

1 noun الاسم



goat

عنزة



bag

حقيرة



boy

ولد



Salma

سلمى

2 Verb الفعل



eat

يأكل



read

يقرأ



play

يلعب



run

يجري

3 adjective الصفة



small ant

نملة صغيرة



big camel

جمل كبير

4 preposition حرف جر



in the morning

في الصباح



on the table

على المنضدة

5 pronoun ضمير



Adam is tall. He isn't short.

آدم طويل. هو ليس قصير.



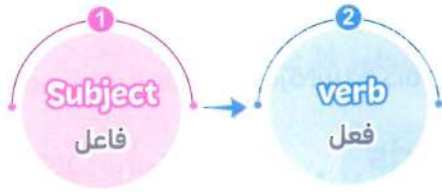
The elephant is big. It isn't small.

الفيل كبير. هو ليس صغير.

- معرفة التلميذ لنوع الكلمة يساعده على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة لتكوين جملة.

2 Sentence

Subject الفاعل



Omar الفاعل
Omar plays tennis.

He plays tennis.

الفاعل He وهو ضمير فاعل
يحل محل الفاعل Omar

الفاعل قد يكون (اسم) أو يكون ضمير من (ضمائر الفاعل) التالية :

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

I أنا	He هو	She هي	It هو/ هي	You أنت / أنتم	They هم	We نحن
عندما يتحدث الشخص عن نفسه	عندما نتحدث عن شخص مفرد ذكر	عندما نتحدث عن شخص مفرد مؤنث	عندما نتحدث عن شيء مفرد غير عاقل	عندما نخاطب شخص أو أكثر	عندما نتحدث عن اثنين أو أكثر	عندما يذكر الشخص نفسه مع الآخرين

الضمائر المفردة



He

She

It



I



You

الضمائر الجمع



They



We



You

2. How to reorder sentences



1 عند وجود [full stop] نقطة (.) في نهاية الجملة يكون نوع الجملة :

1. Statement :

1. جملة خبرية :

ترتيب الكلمات		البداية
باقي الجملة	فعل	تبدأ الجملة الخبرية بـ [فاعل] والفاعل يكون :
live	We	ضمير : I / He / She / It / You / They / We
cooks	Heba	اسم : Noha - Wael - Children - The apple - Monkeys ...
well.		

2. Imperative sentence :

2. جملة أمرية :

ترتيب الكلمات	البداية		
<table border="1"> <tr> <td>باقي الجملة</td><td>مصدر الفعل inf.</td></tr> </table>	باقي الجملة	مصدر الفعل inf.	أمر مثبت : في هذه الحالة تبدأ بـ [مصدر الفعل inf.]
باقي الجملة	مصدر الفعل inf.		
English with us and have fun.	Study		
<table border="1"> <tr> <td>باقي الجملة</td><td>مصدر الفعل inf.</td></tr> </table>	باقي الجملة	مصدر الفعل inf.	أمر منفي : في هذه الحالة تبدأ بـ [مصدر الفعل inf. + Don't]
باقي الجملة	مصدر الفعل inf.		
shout in the classroom.	Don't		

2 عند وجود [question mark] علامة استفهام (?) في نهاية الجملة يكون نوع الجملة :

• Interrogative sentence :

• جملة استفهامية :

ترتيب الكلمات					البداية
فعل أساسي	فاعل	فعل مساعد	كلمة استفهام	١- السؤال بأداة استفهام : How - What - Where - Who - When - Which ...	
go	you	did	Where		
؟ باقي السؤال				٢- السؤال بمعنى "هل...؟" Do - Does - Did - Is - Are - Was - Were ...	
فعل أساسي				فعل مساعد أو ناقص	
the film ?				Did	

3. Punctuation



الحروف الكبيرة : Capital Letters

تستخدم مع

1

بداية الجملة...

الخبرية

He is tall.

الاستفهامية

What is your name?

الأمرية

Open your bag.

2

أسماء المدن والبلاد والأماكن المشهورة

Egypt
Cairo
the Egyptian Museum

3

أسماء البحار والأنهار

the Red Sea
the River Nile

4

أيام الأسبوع وشهور السنة

Friday
May

5

أسماء الأشخاص

Ahmed
Mona

6

اللغات والجنسيات

English
Arabic
Egyptian

7

الضمير "I" في أي مكان في الجملة

I can swim.
Can I swim?

Full stop

توضع **النقطة** في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

* I am Kareem.

* Open the door, please.



Question mark

توضع **علامة الاستفهام** في نهاية السؤال.

How are you ?



Exclamation mark

تستخدم **علامة التعجب** في حالة الترحيب أو التعجب.

Wow !

Hello !

How wonderful !

Help !

What a nice car !



Apostrophe



١. تستخدم **الفاصلة العليا** (') في

الاختصارات مثل

[is = 's / are = 're / have = 've]

It's a puppet.

٢. تستخدم مع (s) الملكية.

That is Heba's car.

Comma

١. تستخدم **الفاصلة السفلية** (,) بعد Yes أو No.

٢. تستخدم للفصل بين مجموعة من الأشياء من نوع واحد.

٣. توضع **الفاصلة** (,) بعد المخاطب في أول الجملة وقبل المخاطب في آخر الجملة.

٤. توضع قبل كلمة (please) في آخر الكلام وبعد (please) أول الكلام.

* Yes, I am.

* No, I am not.

* I met Samya, Heba and Nabila.

* Come here, Noha.

* Noha, come here.

* Please, keep quiet.

* Pass the cake, please.



4. Writing forms



Learn

تعلم

1 Paragraph

• القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

1. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا 1 سم) في السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
2. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
3. أن تضع [.] واضحة في نهاية كل جملة.
4. إتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
5. إبدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل وتوَع بدايات الجمل.
6. إستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
7. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
8. إجتهد في تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
9. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

2 A diary entry

1 Start with the date.

Write the date at the top of your page.

ابدأ بالتاريخ.

اكتب التاريخ في أعلى الصفحة الخاصة بك.

3 Add details.

Who you talked to, what you heard and how you felt.

اوصف تفاصيل.

من تحدثت معه، ماذا سمعت وكيف شعرت.

Steps of writing a diary entry

خطوات كتابة يوميات

2 Write a greeting.

It can be «Dear diary»
or «Hello diary».

اكتب التحية.

من الممكن أن تكون «عزيزتي يومياتي»
أو «مرحبًا يومياتي»

4 End with a closing.

Finish your diary with «Yours truly, and your name.»

أنهى بخاتمة.

أنهى يومياتك بـ «مع خالص تحياتي»
ثم «اسمك».

3 A report

A good report has
التقرير الجيد
يحتوى على

- 1 A clear title عنوان واضح
- 2 An introduction مقدمة
- 3 Facts and information حقائق ومعلومات
- 4 Examples أمثلة
- 5 Solutions حلول
- 6 A conclusion خاتمة

4 A blog has some features

المدونة لها بعض السمات

1. Clear title عنوان واضح
tells readers what the blog post is about. لإخبار القارئ بما تدور حوله المدونة.
2. Writer's name اسم الكاتب
shows who wrote the blog post. يوضح من قام بكتابه المدونة.
3. Date التاريخ
shows when the blog post is written. يوضح الوقت الذي كتبت فيه المدونة.
4. Descriptive words كلمات وصف
help readers imagine and picture what you're writing about. تساعد القارئ على تخيل وتصوير ما نكتب عنه.

5. Interesting details

6. Pictures / Drawings

5 How to write an email

كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني

New Message - □ ×

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello , اسم المرسل إليه

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you.

..... موضوع الرسالة

.....

.....

Yours,

اسم الراسل

📍 ★ 📎 ✎ 🗑️ ▼

5. Writing Practice



* تدرب على كتابة فقرات إنشائية.

* قم بحل التدريبات خطوة بخطوة حتى تتمكن من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

* تدرب يساعد التلاميذ على كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية خطوة بخطوة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختر مدى إقناعك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Our five senses	Write the meaning : حواس مدهش حريق آمن	Reorder the words : 1. have - <u>We</u> - amazing - five - senses. 2. help - safe - stay - us - <u>Senses</u> . 3. a fire - know - there's - <u>We</u> .	Write a paragraph about : Our five senses
My daily routine	روتين يومي صحي إفطار رياضة	1. routine - the same - follow - <u>I</u> . 2. have - <u>I</u> - breakfast - a healthy. 3. for - <u>I</u> - one - play - hour - sports.	My daily routine
How to stay healthy	عادات عقل يقظ كل ليلة	1. <u>Healthy</u> - habits - a lot - help - us. 2. nine - night - <u>Sleep</u> - hours - every. 3. stay - helps - <u>Sleeping</u> - mind - sharp.	How to stay healthy

Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraphs
Write the meaning : 	اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية 	متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Helping community 	Reorder the words : 1. help - <u>It's</u> - community - good - to - our. 2. clean - streets - trash - can - <u>We</u> - from. 3. collect - <u>We</u> - for - poor - clothes - the. 	Write a paragraph about : Helping community
Problems and solutions 	1. problems - are - many - <u>There</u>. 2. traffic - first - <u>The</u> - is - problem. 3. throw - <u>Don't</u> - the ground - trash - on. 	Problems and solutions
Culture in Egypt 	1. regions - <u>Egypt</u> - special - two - has. 2. spring - celebrate - <u>People</u> - festival. 3. carpets - colorful - weave - <u>People</u>. 	Culture in Egypt

Skills	Step 1 Vocabulary اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Animals at forest park	▶ Write the meaning : مرشد الغابة الأسود يتسلق بصطاد	▶ Reorder the words : 1. park - people - <u>Many</u> - visit - forest. 2. visitors - helps - guide - <u>The</u> - forest. 3. at - night - <u>Lions</u> - hunt - often.	▶ Write a paragraph about : Animals at forest park
Helping animals	رعاية خاص / مميز ففص يحمى	1. special - animal - <u>Each</u> - care - needs. 2. cages - <u>Birds</u> - need - clean. 3. protect - should - <u>We</u> - animals.	Helping animals
Endangered animals	معرض للخطر يخفى مواطن تلوث	1. animals - <u>Many</u> - disappear - will. 2. habitats - their - in - houses - <u>People</u> - build. 3. pollution - need - <u>We</u> - stop - to.	Endangered animals

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Amazing places in Egypt	► Write the meaning : الأهرامات متحف كنوز هدايا	► Reorder the words : 1. pictures - take - Tourists - many. 2. Museum - Egyptian - The - amazing - is. 3. there - people - gifts - buy - Many.	► Write a paragraph about : Amazing places in Egypt
Places in your city	 هام أماكن مريض متصل	1. school - The - place - important - is - an. 2. feel - sick - Doctors - better - help - people. 3. connected - stay - us - helps - The - office - post.	Places in your city
St. Cathrine Mountain	 جنوب سيناء جبل زاهى الألوان مقامرة	1. Mountain - St. Cathrine - Egypt - in - is. 2. rocks - colorful - They - see - can. 3. adventures - do - We - there - can.	St. Cathrine Mountain

Step 1 Vocabulary	اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraphs
Different jobs	► Write the meaning : وظائف صحة دور يصمم	► Reorder the words : 1. jobs - <u>All</u> - important - very - are. 2. buildings - new - design - <u>Engineers</u>. 3. important - <u>Nurses</u> - role - play - an.	► Write a paragraph about : Different jobs
A wildlife photographer	 مميز الطبيعة بعيد جدًا صور	1. special - <u>A wildlife</u> - is - job - a - photographer. 2. photos - takes - great - very - <u>He</u>. 3. animals - wild - <u>He</u> - takes - pictures - of.	A wildlife photographer
Firefighters	 سميكة معدات خراطيم مياه حرائق	1. a fire - works at - station - <u>A firefighter</u>. 2. uniform - thick - wears - <u>He</u> - a - protective. 3. hoses - <u>He</u> - uses - ladders - and.	Firefighters

متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية

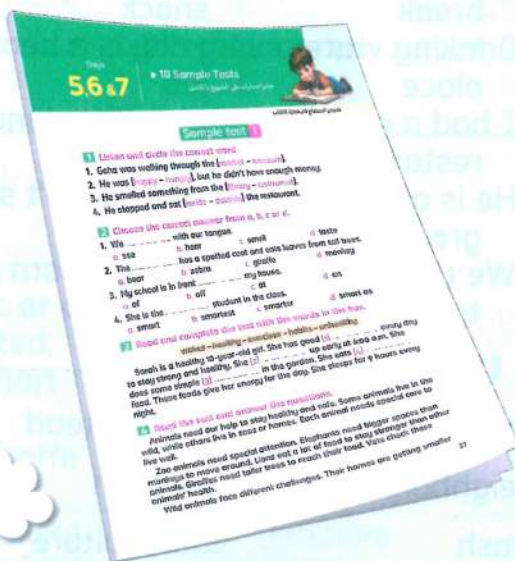
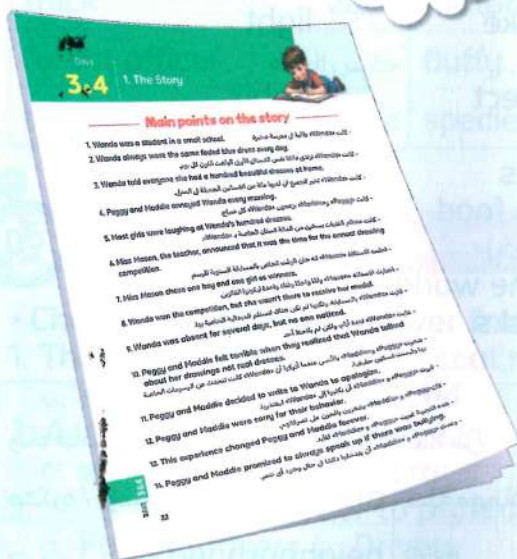
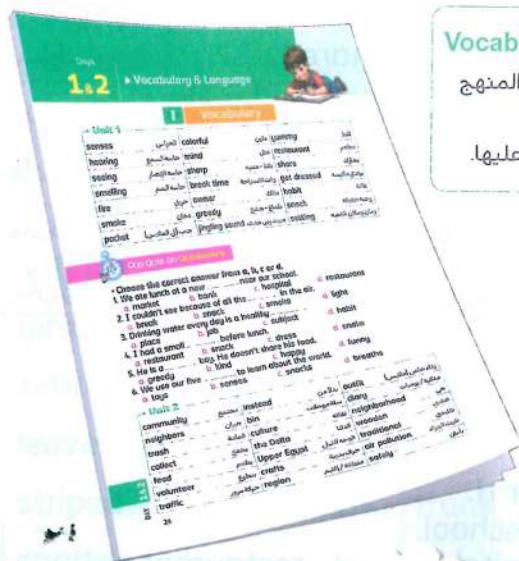
متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية

(الامتحان بين يديك)

Days 1&2

طريقة جديدة وعملية جدًا لمراجعة كل كلمات المنهج والتدريب عليها.

مع عرض كل قواعد المنهج للمراجعة والتدريب عليها.



Days 3&4

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على افضل
درجة فى الامتحان.

Days 5,6&7

عشر اختبارات على المنهج بالكامل.



I

Vocabulary

Unit 1

senses	الحواس	colorful	ملون	yummy	لذيذ
hearing	حاسة السمع	mind	عقل	restaurant	مطعم
seeing	حاسة الإبصار	sharp	يقظ - متنبه	share	يشارك
smelling	حاسة الشم	break time	وقت الاستراحة	get dressed	يرتدي ملابسه
fire	حريق	owner	مالك	habit	عادة
smoke	دخان	greedy	طماع - جشع	snack	وجبه خفيفه
pocket	جيب [في الملابس]	jingling sound	صوت رنين خفيف	setting	زمان ومكان القصة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We ate lunch at a new near our school.
a. market b. bank c. hospital d. restaurant
- I couldn't see because of all the in the air.
a. break b. snack c. smoke d. light
- Drinking water every day is a healthy
a. place b. job c. subject d. habit
- I had a small before lunch.
a. restaurant b. snack c. dress d. snake
- He is a boy. He doesn't share his food.
a. greedy b. kind c. happy d. funny
- We use our five to learn about the world.
a. toys b. senses c. snacks d. breaths

Unit 2

community	مجتمع	instead	بدلاً من	outfit	رداء خاص [ملابس]
neighbors	جيران	bin	سلة مهملات	diary	مفكرة / يوميات
trash	قمامة	culture	ثقافة	neighborhood	حي
collect	يجمع	the Delta	الدلتا	wooden	خشبي
feed	يطعم	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلي	traditional	تقليدي
volunteer	يتطوع	crafts	حرف يدوية	air pollution	تلوث الهواء
traffic	حركة مرور	region	منطقة / إقليم	safely	بأمان



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She wore a new in the party last night.
a. bin b. outfit c. diary d. traffic
2. You should cross the road
a. slowly b. safely c. loudly d. sadly
3. Please, throw the trash in the
a. pen b. bin c. region d. diary
4. Farmers their animals and care for them.
a. feed b. drive c. learn d. ask
5. is a big problem in cities.
a. outfit b. Air pollution c. Community d. Region
6. I chose fruit of candy.
a. before b. instead c. after d. between

Unit 3

giraffe	زرافه	vet	طبيب بيطري	sea grass	عشب بحري
zebra	حمار وحشي	hunt	يصاد	fishing nets	شباك الصيد
leaves	اوراق شجر	pretend	يتظاهر	protect	يحمي
striped	مخطط	trunk	خرطوم	pet	حيوان اليف
spotted	منقط	sick	مريض	cage	قفص
thick	سميك	footprints	أثار أقدام	trick	خدعة / يخدع
forest officer	حارس الغابه	fluffy	ناعم - كثيف	endangered	مهدد بالانقراض
cave	كهف	species	فصائل		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The zebra has a coat, not spotted.
a. sick b. striped c. short d. flying
2. A/An has a very long neck.
a. elephant b. zebra c. giraffe d. lion
3. work harder to protect animals.
a. Forest officers b. Drivers c. Bakers d. Teachers
4. Lions and tigers other animals for food.
a. run b. hunt c. protect d. feed
5. Giraffes eat green
a. meat b. leaves c. stones d. fish
6. There are many different of birds.
a. habits b. species c. leaves d. nets

Unit 4

bazaar	بازار [سوق تجاري]	store	متجر	nurse	ممرضة
oasis	واحة	borrow	يستعير	history	تاريخ
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	monastery	دير	pan	إناء - حاوية
gifts	هدايا	adventure	مغامره	warm clothes	ملابس ثقيله
post office	مكتب بريد	popular	شعبي - محبوب	students	طلاب
packages	طرود	helpful	متعاون	museum	متحف
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	title	عنوان [كتاب - مقال]	rocks	صخور



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Many visit the Grand Egyptian Museum.
a. Cars b. Buses c. Boats d. tourists
- At the, people send letters and packages.
a. oasis b. post office c. museum d. tower
- We can books from the library.
a. borrow b. help c. ride d. build
- The Grand Egyptian has many treasures to see.
a. Tower b. Oasis c. Museum d. Nile
- The shopping mall is a big building with many
a. steps b. packages c. stores d. titles
- Mom cooks eggs in the
a. bin b. pan c. pen d. pond

Unit 5

uniform	زي موحد	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	regret	يندم
patients	المرضى	nurse	ممرضة	promise	يوعد
check	يفحص / يختبر	engineer	مهندس	hero	بطل
costume	زي تنكرى	design	يصمم	carpenter	نجار
mentor	مرشد تعليمي	skilled	بارع - ماهر	equipment	معدات
brave	شجاع	fit	مناسب - ملائم	danger	خطر
puppet	ذمية	furniture	اثاث	alarm	إنذار



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An helps sick people.
a. engineer b. nurse c. mentor d. carpenter
2. means very good at doing something.
a. Skilled b. Fit c. Promised d. Wooden
3. An engineer new buildings.
a. collect b. design c. help d. promise
4. A/An helps young students learn and grow.
a. mentor b. wildlife photographer
c. police officer d. engineer
5. A firefighter wears a blue and a red helmet.
a. alarm b. job c. uniform d. fire
6. A doctor sick people's health.
a. checks b. draws c. designs d. stops

II Language

Unit 1

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative statement :

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

I / They / We / You / اسم جمع + inf. المصدر

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + inf. المصدر + [s/es/ies]

ex. - My brother and I **watch** TV in the evening.

- The nurse **helps** sick people.



Pop Quiz on Language

1. Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I always [**studies**] my lessons after school.
2. Omar [**play**] tennis at the club.
3. My friend and I [**goes**] to school on foot.

4. Sarah [wake] up early at 6:00 a.m.
 5. We [sleeps] for 9 hours every night.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. For breakfast, I healthy food.
 a. eats b. to eat c. eat d. eating
2. Adam's healthy habits make him good.
 a. feels b. feel c. feeling d. to feel
3. Nada her homework in the afternoon.
 a. do b. doing c. does d. to do
4. She sports with her friends during break time.
 a. playing b. to play c. plays d. play

Unit 2

[1] The Present Simple Tense.

زمن المضارع البسيط

Negative statement : subj. فاعل + don't/doesn't + inf.

- Ex. -** Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.
 - He **doesn't need** to use his car every day.

Interrogative : Do/Does + subj. فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- Ex. -** **Does** Mariam **listen** to music on the bus? - No, she **doesn't**.
Do you **take** the bus to the Pyramids? - Yes, I **do**.



Pop Quiz on Language

1. Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. They [throws] trash on the ground.
 2. [Do] she take the bus to school?
 3. Do buses [moves] quickly in the morning?
 4. He [not need] to use a car every day.
 5. Some people don't [putting] trash in bins.

2. Choose correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We go to school on Friday.
 a. doesn't b. don't c. aren't d. haven't
2. He doesn't French.
 a. speaks b. speaking c. speak d. to speak

3. you like bananas?

- a. Does b. Do c. Are d. Has

4. Does he to school by bus?

- a. goes b. go c. went d. going

5. your father work on Saturday ?

- a. Does b. Do c. Is d. Has

[2] The prefix "dis- / il- / ir-" means "not"

تعني "البادئة" "ir- / il- / dis-" [ليس]

dis + main verb = not + main verb

dis + like = not like

il + legal = not legal

ir + regular = not regular

ex. - He **dislikes** ice cream.

- It is **illegal** to drive here.

- The weather is **irregular** today.



Pop Quiz on Language

• Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. He is [**responsible**], he always wastes his time.

2. Planes schedules are [**regular**] in bad weather.

3. It is [**logical**] to run in the rain without a jacket.

4. I saw the birds [**appear**] into the sky.

5. She [**not like**] pizza. It is unhealthy food.

Unit 3

Adjective الصفة	Comparative المقارنة	Example مثال
short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	في حالة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين نضيف للصفة [-er] ثم [than]	- A giraffe is taller than a zebra.

ملاحظات هامة

١. يضاف [-er] للصفة القصيرة ذات مقطع واحد المنتهية بـ [-e] مثل: nice → **nicer**

٢. يضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة [-er] في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد المنتهية بحرف ساكن قبله حرف متحرك

مثل: big → **bigger**

٣. تحول [y] إلى [i] ونضيف [-er] في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ [-y] قبلها حرف ساكن مثل:

healthy → **healthier**



Pop Quiz on Language

1. Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

- The cat is [big] than the mouse.
- I'm taller [that] Adam.
- The weather today is [cold] than yesterday.
- Rabbits are [healthy] than other animals.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Elephants need spaces than monkeys to move around.
a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the biggest
- Marwa is , than her sister.
a. lazy b. lazier c. laziest d. lazily
- Eating vegetables is than eating fast food.
a. healthy b. healthiest c. healthier d. as healthy

Unit 4

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Usage
الاستخدام

- We use prepositions of place to show where things are.
نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتذكر أماكن الأشياء.
- on على - in في - in between بين - in front of أمام - next to بجانب / بجوار
- behind خلف



Pop Quiz on Language

1. Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

- The hospital is next [in] the museum.
- The car is in [behind] of the house.
- The school is [on] the mall and the restaurant.
- I couldn't see the cat because it was in [above] the boxes.
- My family picture is [in] the wall.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- There is a library the school.
a. on b. in c. next d. between

2. The book is the table.

- a. next b. on c. in d. in front

3. The TV is in of the sofa.

- a. under b. next c. between d. front

4. The ball is to the chair.

- a. next b. between c. on d. in

Unit 5

Adjective الصفة	Superlative التفضيل	Example مثال
short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	في حالة المقارنة بين أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين [تفضيل] نضيف للصفة القصيرة [-est] ونضع قبلها [the]	- This tree is the tallest tree in the park.
ملاحظات هامة ١. يضاف [-st] للصفة ذات مقطع واحد المنتهية بـ [-e] مثل: nice → the niciest ٢. يضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة [+est] في الصفات ذات المقطع الواحد المنتهية بحرف ساكن قبله حرف متحرك مثل: big → the biggest ٣. تحول [يا] إلى [إ] ونضيف [-est] في الصفات ذات المقطع الواحد المنتهية بـ [يا] قبلها حرف ساكن مثل: healthy → the healthiest		



Pop Quiz on Language

1. Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

- Our house is the [big] on the street.
- Summer is [that] hottest season of the year.
- The Nile is [long] river in Africa.
- Heba is the [happy] girl in the class.
- Adam is the [nice] friend I have.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My uncle is the person I know.
a. wise b. wiser than c. wisest d. wise
- January is the month of the year.
a. cold b. colder than c. coldest d. colder
- Grandpa told us funniest story at the party.
a. the b. that c. than d. there
- This car is of all.
a. fast b. the fast c. the fastest d. fastest



Main points on the story

1. Wanda was a student in a small school. كانت «Wanda» طالبة في مدرسة صغيرة.
2. Wanda always wore the same faded blue dress every day. كانت «Wanda» ترتدي دائمًا نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت اللون كل يوم.
3. Wanda told everyone she had a hundred beautiful dresses at home. كانت «Wanda» تخبر الجميع ان لديها مائة من الفساتين الجميلة في المنزل.
4. Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda every morning. كانت «Peggy» و«Maddie» يزعجون «Wanda» كل صباح.
5. Most girls were laughing at Wanda's hundred dresses. كانت معظم الفتيات يسخرن من المائة فستان الخاصة بـ «Wanda».
6. Miss Mason, the teacher, announced that it was the time for the annual drawing competition. اعلنت الاستاذة «Mason» انه حان الوقت الخاص بالمسابقة السنوية للرسم.
7. Miss Mason chose one boy and one girl as winners. اختارت الاستاذة «Mason» ولدًا وفتاة واحدة ليكونوا الفائزين.
8. Wanda won the competition, but she wasn't there to receive her medal. فازت «Wanda» بالمسابقة، ولكنها لم تكن هناك لتستلم الميدالية الخاصة بها.
9. Wanda was absent for several days, but no one noticed. غابت «Wanda» لعدة أيام، ولكن لم يلاحظ أحد.
10. Peggy and Maddie felt terrible when they realized that Wanda talked about her drawings not real dresses. شعرت «Peggy» و«Maddie» بالأسى عندما أدركوا أن «Wanda» كانت تتحدث عن الرسومات الخاصة بها وليست فساتين حقيقية.
11. Peggy and Maddie decided to write to Wanda to apologize. قررت «Peggy» و«Maddie» أن يكتبوا إلى «Wanda» ليعتذروا.
12. Peggy and Maddie were sorry for their behavior. كان «Peggy» و«Maddie» يشعرون بالحزن على تصرفاتهم.
13. This experience changed Peggy and Maddie forever. هذه التجربة غيرت «Peggy» و«Maddie» للأبد.
14. Peggy and Maddie promised to always speak up if there was bullying. وعدت «Peggy» و«Maddie» أن يتدخلوا دائمًا في حال وجود أي تنمر.

General Exercises | on the story

1 Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Wanda had one hundred real dresses.
2. Peggy and Maddie laughed at Wanda.
3. Maddie asked Peggy to stop annoying Wanda.
4. Peggy was always kind to Wanda.
5. Wanda's family moved to a big city to find better jobs.
6. We shouldn't judge others by their appearance.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wanda's sent a letter to Miss Mason.
a. mom b. dad c. sister d. neighbor
2. Peggy and Maddie wanted to write a/an to Wanda.
a. email b. letter c. homework d. report
3. **SB** Miss Mason will choose one boy and one girl as in the competition.
a. losers b. players c. winners d. students
4. **SB** Wanda drew and all the drawings in the competition.
a. moved b. sang c. spoke d. signed
5. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's
a. toys b. address c. friendship d. keys
6. Maddie and Peggy sent a letter to to Wanda.
a. wait b. apologize c. look d. ask
7. Wanda won the competition.
a. drawing b. sports c. reading d. writing
8. When Peggy Wanda, Maddie stayed quiet.
a. thanked b. bullied c. covered d. helped

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What competition did Miss Mason announce ?

.....

2. Who drew all the beautiful dresses ?

.....

3. Why wasn't Wanda there to get her medal ?

.....

4. Why did Wanda's family move to the big city ?

.....

5. What did Maddie and Peggy decide to do for Wanda ?

.....

6. How did Wanda feel when she got the letter ?

.....

7. What did Peggy and Maddie learn from their experience ?

.....

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

[A] medal – competition – announce – drawings – experience

Miss Mason announced that it was the time for the annual drawing competition. When it was time to [1] the winner, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful [2] of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda won the [3], but she wasn't there to receive her [4]

[B] dresses – Maddie – annoying – playground – a letter

The popular girls at school, especially Peggy and [1], annoyed Wanda every morning. One day, while they were in the [2], Peggy asked Wanda to tell them about her hundred [3], Maddie didn't like how Peggy was [4] Wanda, but she stayed quiet.

5 Who said this ?

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1. "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners." | [.....] |
| 2. "We need to write to Wanda and apologize." | [.....] |
| 3. "Thank you for your letter." | [.....] |
| 4. "I'm happy at my new school." | [.....] |
| 5. "Your drawings are beautiful and amazing." | [.....] |
| 6. "We are sorry for our behavior." | [.....] |



Important Topics

"Healthy habits"

It's important for all people to have a healthy day. Having a healthy life helps us stay strong and healthy. For a healthy life, we should have healthy foods. Healthy foods give us energy for the day. Fruits and vegetables are also important for us. They give us vitamins. I really like walking and doing sports.

"How to stay healthy"

Having some healthy habits can help us stay healthy. Drinking plenty of water is important for our health. To stay healthy, sleep for eight hours every night. Getting enough sleep helps our mind stay sharp.

"Problems and solutions in our community"

There are many problems in our community. The first problem is traffic. Cars don't move quickly in the morning. So we can use less cars every day and use buses instead. The second problem is trash. Some people don't put trash in bins, so the streets look dirty. It's good to put new bins everywhere so that people don't throw trash on the ground.

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية التي وردت بالمنهج.

"Culture in Egypt"

Egypt has two special regions : the Delta and Upper Egypt. Each region has its traditions and culture. In the Delta region, people celebrate the Spring Festival. In Upper Egypt, people celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. In the Delta region, farmers grow rice and cotton. In Upper, Egypt people make pottery and weave colorful carpets.

"Helping animals"

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Each animal needs special care to live well. Dogs need exercise. Birds need clean cages. Elephants need big spaces to move around. Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them.

"Wild animals"

Wild animals face different challenges. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. Wild animals need clean water and safe places to live. Forest officers work hard to protect these animals.

"Places in your city"

All places in my city are important. One important place is the school. Students go to school to learn and meet friends. The hospital is also a very important place. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better. The post office helps us stay connected. People send letters and packages at the post office.

"St. Catherine Mountain"

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb. They wear warm clothes because it is cold. They see colorful rocks. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature and adventure. People can enjoy the natural world there.

"A wildlife photographer"

A wildlife photographer takes pictures of wild animals in nature. He finds the biggest animals and the smallest birds. He takes great photos in faraway places in nature. He waits a very long time to get the best picture.

"Heroes who fight fires"

A firefighter works at a fire station. He wears a thick protective uniform. He checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready. When the alarm rings, he quickly puts on his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in danger. He uses special tools like water hoses, ladders, and oxygen tanks to fight fires and save people.



Sample test 1

1 Listen and circle the correct word.

- Goha was walking through the [market – museum].
- He was [happy – hungry], but he didn't have enough money.
- He smelled something from the [library – restaurant].
- He stopped and sat [inside – outside] the restaurant.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We with our tongue.
a. see b. hear c. smell d. taste
- The has a spotted coat and eats leaves from tall trees.
a. bear b. zebra c. giraffe d. monkey
- My school is in front my house.
a. of b. off c. at d. on
- She is the student in the class.
a. smart b. smartest c. smarter d. smart as

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wakes – healthy – exercises – habits – unhealthy

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She has good [1] every day to stay strong and healthy. She [2] up early at 6:00 a.m. She does some simple [3] in the garden. She eats [4] food. These foods give her energy for the day. She sleeps for 9 hours every night.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs special care to live well.

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets check these animals' health.

Wild animals face different challenges. Their homes are getting smaller

because of new cities. They need clean water and safe places to live. Forest officers now work harder than before to protect these animals and their homes.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. work hard to protect animals and their homes.
a. Nurses b. Mentors c. Engineers d. Forest officers
2. Animals live in the, zoos or homes.
a. station b. wild c. moon d. sky

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who check animals' health ?
.....

4. What do animals need to live well ?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. He [go] to school every day.
2. A giraffe is [tallest] than a zebra.
3. The post office is [behind] the school and the hospital.
4. My school is next [too] my house.

6 Story

1. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Wanda's family moved to the big city. ☐
2. Wanda's drawings are ugly. ☐

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wanda was a/an girl.
a. lazy b. noisy c. quiet d. angry
2. Maddie was of losing Peggy's friendship.
a. afraid b. happy c. excited d. amazing

3. Answer the following questions.

1. What did Wanda always wear every day ?
.....

2. What did Miss Mason announce to the class ?
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

1. pets need daily care from their owners

2. do you live in a city or a village

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences about [18-24] words using the following guiding elements.

"Places in Egypt"

Guiding elements :

• famous

• visit

• tourists

Sample test 2

نصوص الدستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the following questions.

1. How is life in Upper Egypt ?

2. What do people make by hand ?

3. Who sing traditional songs ?

4. How are houses painted in Nubia ?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Cheetahs are the animal.

a. fast

b. fastest

c. faster

d. faster than

2. The armchair is of the bookcase.

a. in front

b. next

c. between

d. behind

3. The is black and white. It has a striped coat.

a. bear

b. zebra

c. monkey

d. lion

4. I touch soft and hard things with my

a. hands

b. nose

c. ears

d. tongue

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

books - visit - history - Egypt - Mountain

I'm Kareem. I am Egyptian. I'm a tour guide. Many people come to visit [1] every year. There are many interesting places to [2] in Egypt. It's my job to explain the [3] to the tourists. Today, I have a visit to St. Catherine [4]

4 Read the text and write T [True] or F [False].

Once, there was an old lion. He was very weak and couldn't hunt anymore. He tricked animals and pretended to be sick in his cave. He called the animals and asked them to visit him before he died. Many animals entered and never returned. A wise fox noticed the one-way footprints. He didn't go into the cave and ran away safely.

1. The old lion was very strong.
2. The old lion pretended to be sick.
3. Many animals entered and never returned.
4. The fox is wise.

☐
☐
☐
☐

5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. A mouse is small than a rabbit.
2. I carry the heavy bag.
3. The park is next of the museum.
4. He catch the bus to Giza every day.

6 Read and match [A] with [B].

[A]

1. To share means
2. The word disappear is the opposite of
3. Hunt means to look

[B]

- ☐ a. appear.
- ☐ b. for and catch animals for food.
- ☐ c. marks left by feet.
- ☐ d. to give some of what you have to others.

7 Story

1. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Wanda wasn't at the school to receive her medal. ☐

2. Everyone noticed that Wanda was absent for several days. ☐

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's

a. mom

b. dad

c. sister

d. friend

2. Maddie and Peggy wrote a/an to Wanda.

a. newspaper

b. letter

c. email

d. blog

3. Answer the following questions.

1. Who annoyed Wanda every morning?

.....

2. Who won the drawing competition?

.....

8 Punctuate the following.

1. the lion is the king of the jungle land

.....

2. how do vets help animals

.....

9 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR [24] words using the following guiding elements.

"Siwa Oasis"

Guiding elements :

• sunset

• photos

• salt lake

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Sample test 3

نصوص الدستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the following questions.

1. What grade is Faten in ?

.....

2. Who does she have breakfast with ?

.....

3. What does she like ?

.....

4. Where does she play tennis ?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She fruit and vegetables to stay healthy.

a. eat b. eating c. eats d. to eat

2. The dog after eating all the food.

a. irregular b. disappears c. illegal d. dishonest

3. He doesn't to use his car every day.

a. needs b. need c. to need d. needed

4. A/An helps doctors and cares for the patients.

a. engineer b. firefighter c. nurse d. vet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

parrots - project - read - animals - park

Yesterday, Ali went to a forest [1] with his family. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different [2] like lions, elephants and bears. He saw his favorite birds, the [3] He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats; he is doing a [4] on them at a school.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place in the desert. People have lived here for thousands of years. The desert is hot and dry. There's water in the oasis. People can grow trees and plants and keep animals in the desert. There are many places we can see there. There is the Salt Lake where we can swim and take nice photos. In the desert, we can see the sunset.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The weather is in the desert.
a. cold b. hot c. rainy d. wet
2. Siwa Oasis is a very place.
a. bad b. sad c. interesting d. angry

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can people grow in Siwa Oasis ?
.....

4. What can we do in the desert?
.....

5 Reorder to make sentences.

1. does – father – What – do – your ?
.....
2. a – program – animals – I – TV – about – watch.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. The flowers are [on] the vase.
2. The table is [next] the box and the armchair.
3. The giraffe is [tall] than the lion.
4. My car is the [fast] one.

7 Story

1. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Wanda received the letter at her new school. ☐
2. Wanda isn't happy at her new school. ☐

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wanda always wore the same faded blue every day.
a. dress b. closet c. letter d. drawing
2. Maddie and Peggy promised to always speak up if there was
a. sleeping b. running c. bullying d. eating

3. Answer the following questions.

1. Where did Wanda's family move?
.....

2. Who read the letter from Wanda's dad to the class ?
.....

8 Punctuate the following.

1. the monkey climbs trees

2. she helps her neighbors

9 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences about [18-24] words using the following guiding elements.

"Your favorite job"

Guiding elements :

• take pictures

• interesting

• photographer

Sample test 4

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amir's favorite sea animal is the

a. lion

b. dugong

c. bear

d. panda

2. It is from

a. Egypt

b. India

c. America

d. France

3. The dugong spends many hours eating sea

a. bamboo

b. leaves

c. trees

d. grass

4. It is in danger because of

a. pollution

b. sea animals

c. fish

d. buildings

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They football on weekends.

a. play

b. plays

c. playing

d. to play

2. This is the building in town.

a. old

b. older

c. oldest

d. as old

3. We went to Khan Al-Khalili to buy gifts.
 a. Museum b. Tower c. Bazaar d. Oasis
4. A..... takes lots of pictures every day with his camera.
 a. photographer b. mentor c. vet d. doctor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shopping mall - borrow - sick - post office - school

I have different places in my town. Young children go to [1] every morning to learn. They can [2] books from the library. When people feel [3], they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the [4] where many shops sell different things.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, I enjoyed reading an interesting story. The setting was in the countryside, many years ago. It was about a man who was going to the market with his son and his donkey. They took turns to ride the donkey because it was a long journey. When the boy rode the donkey, people said he should let his father ride. When the father rode, people said he should let his son ride. At the end of the story, both the son and father carried the donkey. I like reading stories about Goha because he is clever and funny.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The story is about ".....".
 a. Two girls b. Two animals
 c. Two women d. A man and his son
2. The underlined word "setting" refers to the
 a. characters b. moral c. place and time d. ending

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why does the writer like reading stories about Goha?
-

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.
-

5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. The library is in front off the hospital. [.....]
2. Winter is a coldest season. [.....]
3. His bag is heavy than his sister. [.....]
4. He drink coffee every morning. [.....]

6 Story

1. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Wanda had one hundred real dresses.
2. Wanda's aunt sent a letter to Miss Mason.

☐☐

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wanda's school was

a. small b. big c. large d. huge

2. won the drawing competition.

a. Peggy b. Maddie c. Wanda d. Miss Mason

3. Answer the following questions.

1. What did Wanda ask the girls to do in her reply letter?

.....

2. Who were the popular girls in the school?

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

1. what do pets need

.....

2. the zebra runs in groups

.....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"Our senses"

Guiding elements :

• taste

• hear

• smell

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample test 5

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nora gets up at in the morning.
a. 6 : 00 b. 9 : 00 c. 7 : 00 d. 8 : 00
2. Nora takes a short in the morning.
a. photo b. sleep c. snack d. shower
3. She eats her at 8 : 00 in the morning.
a. dinner b. lunch c. breakfast d. snack
4. Nora helps her mom in the
a. garden b. living room c. kitchen d. bedroom

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The elephant uses its to spray water on its body.
a. tail b. trunk c. coat d. fur
2. At the, people send letters and packages.
a. shopping mall b. post office c. library d. museum
3. The dog was the chair.
a. in b. next c. front d. behind
4. My grandpa early every night.
a. sleeping b. sleeps c. sleep d. slept

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

equipment - fires - hose - use - uniform

Ali is a firefighter. He wears a blue [1] and a heavy helmet to stay safe. Every day, he checks his [2] and keeps the fire truck ready. When people need help, Ali and his team quickly drive to help them. He uses a long water [3] to stop fires. He also has a special ladder for tall buildings. Ali saves people from [4] Ali loves his job because he likes saving people.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Ahmed. I am a student. My father works as a doctor. He always helps sick people to get better. Last week, my sister felt bad ache so we went to the hospital quickly. She stayed for three days there. When we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being in the hospital. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted a lot of pictures of flowers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Ahmed's father is a
a. nurse b. firefighter c. vet d. doctor
- Ahmed and his friends painted a lot of pictures of
a. flowers b. money c. toys d. books

B. Answer the following questions.

- Where should we go when we are sick?
.....

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Nora has the [long] hair in the group.
- He doesn't [goes] to the club after school.
- English is [easy] than math.
- Do they [walks] to school every day?

6 Read and match [A] with [B].

- [A]
- Greedy means •
 - The opposite of relevant is •
 - Lay down means •

- [B]
- ☐ a. irrelevant.
 - ☐ b. put yourself on a surface, like the ground or a bed.
 - ☐ c. illegal.
 - ☐ d. always wanting more than what is needed.

7 Story

- Read and write T [True] or F [False].

- Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's mom. ☐
- Wanda was at school and could receive her medal. ☐

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Wanda's family wanted a place where people were
a. kind b. dangerous c. famous d. noisy
- Wanda received a from Peggy and Maddie at her new school.
a. gift b. letter c. drawing d. present

3. Answer the following questions.

1. Why didn't Maddie stop Peggy from annoying Wanda?

.....

2. What did the drawings on the wall show?

.....

8 Punctuate the following.

1. animals need our help to stay healthy

.....

2. when do lions often hunt

.....

9 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR [24] words using the following guiding elements.

"Your favorite animals"

Guiding elements :

• elephant

• trunk

• spray

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample test 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our help us understand the world.

a. voices

b. flowers

c. habits

d. senses

2. We can taste delicious food with our

a. nose

b. ears

c. tongue

d. eyes

3. We can touch soft and things with our hands.

a. lazy

b. hard

c. calm

d. high

4. We can flowers with our nose.

a. touch

b. taste

c. smell

d. hear

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. Noha her toys with her cousins.
a. shares b. writes c. reads d. feeds
2. I love my cat and it every day.
a. feed b. collect c. volunteer d. throw
3. There are many buses in of the hospital.
a. behind b. between c. front d. next
4. Marwa take the bus to school?
a. Is b. Was c. Do d. Does

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Vets - Elephants - stronger - trees - play

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Zoo animals need special attention. [1] need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay [2] than other animals. Giraffes need taller [3] to reach their food. [4] often check these animals' health.

4 Read the text and write T (True) or F (False).

Our city has many important places, that help people every day. One important place is the school. Students go to school to learn and meet friends. Teachers help students learn new things. There is a library in the school. The library has many books. Students can read or borrow books from the library.

1. Teachers go to school to learn. ☐
2. Teachers help students learn new things. ☐
3. The hospital has many books. ☐
4. We can borrow books from the school library. ☐

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. August is the [hotter] month of the year.
2. We [washes] our faces every day.
3. Tamer [don't] throw trash on the ground.
4. Sara is [young] than her sister.

6 Story

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Wanda had many real dresses. ☐
2. Every morning, Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda. ☐

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Miss Mason announced the time of the annual competition.
a. drawing b. music c. reading d. sports
2. family moved to a big city.
a. Peggy's b. Wanda's c. Mason's d. Maddie's

3. Answer the following questions.

1. What did Wanda say in her letter to Peggy and Maddie?

.....

2. Who won the drawing competition?

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

1. having a daily routine is important

.....

2. how many senses do we have

.....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"Helping the community"

Guiding elements :

• plant

• collect

• volunteer

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Sample test 7

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Pets need daily care from their

a. volunteers b. community c. guides d. owners

2. Dogs need

a. cages b. caves c. exercise d. vegetables

3. eat fresh vegetables.

- a. Rabbits b. Cats c. Lions d. Dogs

4. need cleaner cages than other animals.

- a. Whales b. Fish c. Birds d. Horses

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. We flowers in the garden with our nose.

- a. taste b. touch c. smell d. hear

2. Sarah and her brother computer games every Friday.

- a. plays b. play c. playing d. is playing

3. is a light, ringing sound.

- a. Festival b. Craft c. Jangling d. Traffic

4. Bears are than cats.

- a. the biggest b. bigger c. biggest d. big

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

rocks - monastery - explore - photos - tourists

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. Many [1] like to visit it because there are a lot of things they can do there. They enjoy visiting St. Catherine Mountain. They see colorful [2] and small plants. They take [3] with their cameras. They like visiting the old [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

It is important to eat healthy foods like fruits and vegetables to be healthy. There are lots of things that we can do to look after our health. You should do some exercises every day. It is very important to keep your body moving. Playing sports with friends is a good way to exercise. Going to bed early is important to get enough sleep. You should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Playing sports with friends is a good way to

- a. sleep b. exercise c. look d. write

2. The main idea of the text is about ""

- a. How to play football b. How to be fast
c. How to be healthy d. How to be happy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is it important to eat healthy foods?

.....

4. How many hours should you sleep at night?

.....

5 Reorder to make sentences.

1. with – eyes – I – my – see.

.....

2. you – community – Why – help – do – your ?

.....

6 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. My school is in front off the bank.

[.....]

2. Hani doesn't likes to play tennis.

[.....]

3. Fruits and vegetables are healthy than fast food.

[.....]

4. Nader is the taller boy in our class.

[.....]

7 Story

1. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Peggy drew and signed all the drawings in the competition.

☐

2. Wanda told everyone she had a hundred beautiful dresses.

☐

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. won the drawing competition.

a. Wanda

b. Peggy

c. Miss Mason

d. Maddie

2. Peggy and Maddie felt when Wanda moved to a new school.

a. excited

b. tired

c. terrible

d. happy

3. Answer the following questions.

1. What did the girls do to Wanda every morning?

.....

2. What did Wanda always wear?

.....

8 Punctuate the following.

1. what do tourists do at the Pyramids

.....

2. sarah wakes up early every day

.....

9 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences about [18-24] words using the following guiding elements.

"Healthy habits"

Guiding elements :

- sleep
- wake up
- fruits and vegetables

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample test 8

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. pl _ t _ 2. _ orest 3. _ iolin 4. _ ruit

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. We taste delicious food with our
 a. eyes b. ears c. tongues d. noses
2. Cars don't move quickly because of the problem of
 a. air b. water c. traffic d. food
3. My bike is to the bus.
 a. in b. between c. in front d. next
4. Omar doesn't the plastic bottles.
 a. collected b. collecting c. collects d. collect

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

collect - feed - volunteer - trash - plant

Amira and Adam are friends. Every Saturday, they [1] to help their community. They [2] trees in the park. They clean [3] from the streets. They [4] clothes and give them to people who need them.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many tourists like to visit Egypt. They come to Egypt in winter to enjoy the warm weather. They visit many places such as the Cairo Tower and the Pyramids. They take lots of photos. Other tourists like beaches, so they come in summer. They like to visit Hurghada for its beautiful beaches.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "warm" is the opposite of
a. new b. near c. cold d. interesting
2. The text is about " "
a. Tourists in Egypt b. Sports
c. The Nile d. Alexandria

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do tourists like to visit Egypt in winter ?
.....

4. Why do tourists like to visit Hurghada ?
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Cars are [fast] than bikes.
2. Every Friday, Hazem and Maged [plays] tennis.
3. [Do] your brother read a story every night ?
4. The shopping mall is next [of] the local park.

6 Story

1. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Peggy sat in the back of the classroom. ☐
2. Naddie was afraid of losing Wanda's friendship. ☐

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Most of the girls were laughing about Wanda's hundred
a. bags b. dresses c. rooms d. skirts
2. Miss Mason read a from Wanda's dad. ,
a. newspaper b. book c. story d. letter

3. Answer the following questions.

1. What were on the walls during the drawing competition?

.....

2. What did Peggy and Maddie learn in the end?

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

1. why are senses important to us

.....

2. egypt has two special regions

.....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"A day at the forest park"

Guiding elements :

• forest

• animals

• visitors

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Sample test 9

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct word.

1. feed - pet

2. ban - pen

3. plane - plant

4. cube - stone

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. A/An wears a blue uniform and a red helmet.

a. doctor

b. firefighter

c. nurse

d. engineer

2. I can with my ears.

a. see

b. taste

c. hear

d. touch

3. Heba TV in the evening.

- a. watch b. watches c. watching d. to watch

4. Do you to school on Friday? - No, I don't.

- a. goes b. went c. go d. going

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pottery - bright - celebrate - songs - sing

In Upper Egypt, life is different. People [1] the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make [2] and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing traditional [3] and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in [4] colors and have special designs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Farah. Last week, I went to the Egyptian Museum. The Egyptian Museum is one of the world's most important museums of old history. It has many treasures to see and history, too. My family and I went there by car. We saw amazing statues and jewelry. I was very happy and it was a special visit.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "amazing" means ".....".

- a. scary b. ugly c. happy d. wonderful

2. Farah went to the museum by

- a. bus b. train c. car d. bike

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4. What did they see in the museum?

.....

5 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. She eat healthy breakfast every morning.

[.....]

2. Does they need to use cars every day?

[.....]

3. He is tall than his brother.

[.....]

4. The school is behind the mall and the restaurant.

[.....]

6 Story

1. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Miss Mason announced a painting competition. ☐
2. Peggy and Maddie didn't care that Wanda left the school. ☐

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wanda's drawings were and full of colors.
 a. ugly b. beautiful c. bad d. kind
2. Wanda always wore a blue dress every day.
 a. bright b. colorful c. faded d. new

3. Answer the following questions.

1. Why didn't Maddie speak up for annoying Wanda?

.....

2. How many winners were chosen in the competition?

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

1. the elephant has a long trunk

.....

2. goha was walking through the market

.....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"The Pyramids"

Guiding elements :

• tourists

• ride a camel

• visit

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample test 10

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. h _ _ t 2. _ row n 3. b _ _ k 4. r _ p _

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An stops fires and saves people.
a. firefighter b. nurse c. mentor d. engineer
2. I had a small before lunch.
a. dress b. snake c. snack d. sense
3. What Ali says is It doesn't make sense.
a. illogical b. appear c. dishonest d. dislike
4. Elephants need spaces than monkeys to move around.
a. big b. bigger c. the biggest d. biggest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

show – laughs – puppets – children – mentor

Salma works with puppets. She has a great job! She uses [1] to tell stories. "I do many shows for [2]", she says. "I love seeing their big smiles and hearing their loud [3] It's fun when children enjoy the [4] ..!"

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our health is important. Doctors can give us medicine to help us when we are sick. Here are some ideas to protect you from illnesses. You should have a healthy food. It is important to get enough sleep. It is important to brush your teeth every day to keep them strong and healthy. You should look after your eyes and ears. It is a good idea to have an eye test every year. You shouldn't listen to loud music. Exercise is very good for your heart and brain.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Listening to too loud music is for you.
a. good b. healthy c. unhealthy d. right
2. Doctors give us when we are sick.
a. apples b. medicine c. figs d. oranges

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is exercise good for?
-

4. Why is it important to brush your teeth?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I [wakes] up early at 6:00 a.m.
2. Some people [not put] trash in bins.
3. He [not like] chocolate. It is unhealthy food.
4. The books are [next] the table.

6 Story

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Wanda was a noisy girl in the class. ☐
2. Wanda said she had a hundred real dresses at home. ☐

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wanda was when she received the letter from Peggy and Maddie.

a. angry b. happy c. sad d. angry

2. Peggy and Maddie were girls at the school.

a. shy b. popular c. honest d. lonely

3. Answer the following questions.

1. What lesson did the girls learn from what happened with Wanda?

.....

2. Who was afraid of losing Peggy's friendship if she spoke up?

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i can see with my eyes

.....

2. he dislikes loud noise

.....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"Your community's history"

Guiding elements :

• neighborhood

• market

• old

Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع



Sample test 1

• Listen and circle the correct word.

Goha was a funny man. One day, he was walking through the market. He was hungry, but he didn't have enough money. Suddenly, he smelled something delicious from the restaurant. He stopped and sat outside the restaurant to enjoy the smell of the soup.

Sample test 2

• Listen and answer the following questions.

In Upper Egypt, life is different. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special designs.

Sample test 3

• Listen and answer the following questions.

My name is Faten. I'm in grade four. I do a lot of activities. I always eat breakfast with my family. I don't like fish. I like drawing pictures of flowers. I often play tennis in the club.

Sample test 4

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Amir. I'm Egyptian. I like animals. My favorite sea animal is the dugong. The dugong is from Egypt. The dugong has got a lovely face and it's very cute. It spends many hours eating

sea grass. It's in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

Sample test 5

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Nora. I'm in grade four. I get up at six o'clock in the morning and I take a short shower. I eat my breakfast at 8 o'clock. Then I go to school. In the afternoon, I help my mom in the kitchen.

Sample test 6

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Our senses are amazing. They help us understand the world. We can taste delicious food with our tongue. We can touch soft and hard things with our hands. We can smell flowers with our nose.

Sample test 7

• Listen and circle the correct answer.

Pets need daily care from their owners. Dogs need exercise. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables, and they are healthier than other animals. Birds need cleaner cages than other animals.

Sample test 8

• Listen and write the missing sounds.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1. plate | 2. forest |
| 3. violin | 4. fruit |

Sample test 9

• Listen and circle the correct word.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. pet | 2. pen |
| 3. plant | 4. stone |

Sample test 10

• Listen and write the missing sounds.

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| 1. heat | 2. frown | 3. beak | 4. rope |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|

Glossary of Words and Phrases



Category	Word	Definition
Action Words	Run	Move quickly
	Draw	To make a picture with a pencil or pen
	Plant	To place seeds in the soil to grow
	Exercise	To move your body to stay healthy
	Clean	To remove dirt or mess
	Announce	To say something officially
Animal Words	Giraffe	A tall African animal with a long neck
	Elephant	A large animal with a trunk
	Monkey	A playful animal that swings on trees
	Zebra	A striped animal from Africa
	Fox	A small wild animal with red fur
	Lion	A large wild cat
	Endangered	Animal species at risk of disappearing
Classroom Words	Hunt	To chase or capture for food
	Look at the	Asking to observe something
Community Words	Neighbor	A person who lives near you
	Trash	Waste or garbage
	Trees	Plants with trunks and leaves
	Street	A road in a city or town
	Factory	A place where products are made
	Flag	A symbol of a country
Culture Words	Tradition	A custom passed down through generations
	Festival	A celebration with food, music, or dancing
Descriptive Phrases	It is big.	Used to describe a large object
Events	Medal	A prize given to a winner
	Competition	A contest between people or teams
	Winner	The person who finishes first

Greetings	Hello	A polite way to greet someone
Healthy Habits	Water	A drink that keeps the body hydrated
	Fruit	A healthy food like apples or bananas
	Vegetable	A healthy food like carrots or spinach
	Exercise	Activity that keeps the body fit
	Sleep	Resting at night to stay healthy
Jobs	Doctor	A person who treats illnesses
	Engineer	A person who designs and builds things
	Nurse	A person who cares for sick people
	Teacher	A person who helps others learn
	Firefighter	A person who puts out fires
	Police officer	A person who protects the public
	Carpenter	A person who builds with wood
	Wildlife photographer	A person who photographs animals in nature
	Voice-over actor	A person who records voices for TV/radio
Numbers	Hundred	The number 100
	Billion	One thousand million [1,000,000,000]
Objects	Gift	A present given to someone
	Uniform	Special clothes for work or school
	Furniture	Tables, chairs, and other home items
Phonics - Long Vowels	Plane	A flying vehicle
	Plate	A flat dish for food
	Feed	To give food
	Home	Where you live
	Rope	A strong string
Phonics - Short Vowels	Hat	A piece of clothing for the head
	Pen	A tool for writing
	Pot	A round container for cooking
	Bat	An animal OR a tool used in sports
	Pan	A flat container used for frying

Places	School	A place for learning
	Library	A place with books and resources
	Post office	A place to send and receive mail
	Hospital	A place where doctors and nurses help people
	Bazaar	A market where goods are sold
	Siwa Oasis	A famous desert oasis in Egypt
	Cairo Tower	A tall landmark in Cairo
	Pyramids	Ancient triangular Egyptian structures
Prepositions	In	Inside something
	On	Resting on the surface
	Behind	At the back of
	In front of	Ahead of or before
	Next to	Beside or near
	between	In the middle of two things
Story Elements	Setting	Where and when a story takes place
	Characters	People or animals in a story
	Plot	The main events of a story
Time Expressions	First	Happening before anything else
	Then	Used to show what happens next
	After that	Used to describe the next step
	Finally	Used to describe the last step
Tools & Equipment	Ladder	A device for climbing
	Water hose	A long tube for spraying water
	Tools	Things used to fix or build things
Visual Literacy	Blog	A short online article or post
Writing Elements	Sign	When someone writes their name
	Title	The name of a story or article
	Date	The day something is written or happens
	Writer's name	The person who wrote the piece
	Heading	A main title of a section
	Sub-heading	A smaller title under a heading
	Call to action	A phrase that encourages action (e.g., "Join us!")
	Descriptive words	Words that tell more about a person or object
	Image	A picture to show something visually